

Contents

AGYNAMIX Invoicer - User Manual	16
About AGYNAMIX Invoicer	16
Key Features	16
System Requirements	16
Operating System	16
Hardware	16
Software	16
About This Manual	17
Manual Structure	17
Conventions in This Manual	17
Quick Start Guide	18
Step 1: Installation	18
Step 2: Create Your First Tenant	18
Step 3: Create Your First Customer	20
Step 4: Create Your First Invoice	21
Step 5: Publish and Export Invoice	22
Step 6: Record Payment	23
Step 0: Load Demo Data (Optional)	23
Next Steps	24
Help and Support	24
In the Application	24
Online Resources	24
Data Location	25
Copyright and License	25
Version History	25
Version 1.3.0 (February 2026)	25
Version 1.2.0 (January 12, 2026)	26
1. Menu Bar	26
1.1 File Menu	27
Create Backup...	27
Restore from Backup...	28
Verify Audit Log...	29
Export Audit Log...	30
Export Customers (CSV)...	31
Export Products (CSV)...	32
Import & Verify Export...	32
Import Customers (CSV)...	35
Import Products (CSV)...	35
Export Data (Z3)...	35
Export DATEV (Buchungsstapel)...	35
Archive Browser	36
Exit	36
1.2 Edit Menu	37

Preferences	37
Load Demo Data	38
Switch to Sandbox	38
Corrupted Sandbox Database	38
Sandbox Database Removed	39
Switch to Production	39
Delete Demo Data	39
1.3 Help Menu	40
Quick Reference	41
Manual	41
Download Compliance Agreement	41
Check for Updates	41
Open Database Folder	43
Show Log	44
Start Guided Tour	45
License...	46
License Prefs Debug...	46
About	46
1.4 Tenant Selection	47
Function	47
Usage	47
Multi-Company Management	48
Summary	49
2. Dashboard	49
2.1 Dashboard Structure	50
Hero Area (Header Section)	50
Metric Cards	50
2.2 Metrics in Detail	50
Published This Year	50
Drafts	51
Requires Attention	52
Payment Overdue	52
Total Revenue	53
Revenue This Year	54
Outstanding Amounts	55
2.3 Navigation via Metrics	56
How it works:	56
Examples:	57
2.4 Welcome Area (on First Start)	57
Welcome Actions:	58
2.5 Empty Dashboard	59
2.6 Multiple Currencies	60
Display:	60
Currency Handling:	60
2.7 Monthly Revenue Chart	61

What is displayed:	61
Interpretation:	61
2.8 Dashboard and Tenant Selection	62
Behavior:	62
2.9 Dashboard Refresh	63
Automatic Refresh:	63
Manual Refresh:	63
2.10 Typical Dashboard Workflows	63
Morning Routine: Get Overview	63
Weekly Financial Review	64
Month-End Closing	64
Summary	65
3. Sales Documents (Documents)	65
3.1 Document List and Navigation	66
List Overview	66
Header	67
3.2 Filters and Search	68
Using the Search Field	68
Opening Filters	69
Available Filters	70
Reset Filters	74
Reactivate Filters	75
3.3 Create Document	75
Create New Quote or Invoice	75
3.4 Edit Document (Draft)	76
General Information	76
Line Items	81
Text Snippets	84
Description / Notes (optional)	85
3.5 Save Document	85
Save as Draft	85
Go Back Without Saving	85
3.6 Document Status and Lifecycle	86
Status Overview	86
Status Transitions	87
3.7 Publish Document	87
Prerequisites	87
Perform Publication	87
3.8 Record Payment	89
Add Payment	89
Partial Payments	90
Overpayment	90
Undo Payment	91
3.9 Create Invoice from Quote	91
Workflow: Quote → Invoice	92

3.10 Create Payment Reminder (Dunning)	92
Prerequisites	92
Create Reminder	93
Escalation Levels	93
Mark Reminder as Obsolete	93
3.11 Invoice Correction Options	94
Prerequisites	94
Perform Correction	94
3.12 Duplicate Document	95
Perform Duplication	96
3.13 PDF Export and Preview	96
Show PDF Preview	97
Export PDF	97
ZUGFeRD and XRechnung	98
Export History	98
3.14 Send Document via Email	99
Prerequisites	99
Send an Email	99
Copy to Sent Folder (IMAP)	99
3.15 Delete Document	99
Delete Drafts	99
Delete Published Documents	100
3.16 Show Audit Log	100
Open Audit Log	100
What is Logged?	101
3.17 Practical Workflows	101
Workflow 1: Quote Process – From Quote to Invoice (5–10 minutes)	101
Workflow 2: Dunning Management – Process Overdue Invoices (5–10 minutes daily)	102
Workflow 3: Month-End Closing – Export All Invoices (15–30 minutes monthly)	103
3.18 Pro Tips for Efficient Work	103
3.19 Related Documents Panel	104
Where the Panel Appears	104
What Links Are Shown	104
Navigate Between Linked Documents	105
3.20 Payment Overview	105
How to Open the Payment Overview	105
What the Payment Overview Shows	106
Available Filters	106
Visual Payment Badges	106
Using the Payment Overview to Manage Receivables	106
4. Time Tracking (Timesheets)	107
4.1 Timesheet Concept	107

Workflow: From Time Tracking to Invoice	108
4.2 Timesheet List	108
List Overview	108
Status Display	109
4.3 Filters and Search	109
Using the Search Field	109
Filter by Customer	110
Filter by Status	110
4.4 Create Timesheet	110
Create New Timesheet	110
Form Fields	111
Save Timesheet	117
4.5 Edit Timesheet	117
Open Timesheet	117
Detail View Overview	118
Edit Basic Data	118
4.6 Record Time Entries	119
Add New Time Entry	119
Input Form	120
Save Entry	126
4.7 Manage Time Entries	127
Display Entries	127
Edit Entry	128
Delete Entry	128
4.8 Periods Overview	128
Current Period	129
Past Periods	129
4.9 Create Invoice from Period	130
Prerequisites	130
Create Invoice	130
Confirmation Dialog	130
What Happens in the Background?	132
4.10 Edit and Publish Invoice	133
Edit Invoice	133
Publish Invoice	134
Return to Time Tracking	134
4.11 Delete Period (Drafts Only)	135
Prerequisites	135
Delete Period	135
What Happens When Deleting?	136
4.12 Archive Timesheet (Set Inactive)	136
Manually Set Inactive	136
Automatically Inactive Through New Timesheet	137
Display Inactive Timesheets	137
4.13 Practical Workflows	137

Workflow 1: Complete Workflow – Time Tracking to Invoice (15–30 minutes initial, then 5–10 minutes weekly) . . .	137
Workflow 2: Project-Based Billing with Custom Period (10– 15 minutes at completion)	139
Workflow 3: Track Partially Non-Billable Hours (5 minutes daily)	140
4.14 Pro Tips for Efficient Time Tracking	140

5. Tenant Management	141
5.1 Tenant Concept	142
Why Multiple Tenants?	142
5.2 Tenant List	143
List Overview	143
Default Tenant	143
5.3 Create Tenant	143
Create New Tenant	143
5.4 Company Information	144
Company Name (required field)	144
Owner (optional)	144
Address (required fields)	144
Tax Information	146
Commercial Register (optional)	146
Responsible Persons (optional)	147
5.5 Contact Information	147
General Email (required field)	147
Billing Email (optional)	147
Main Phone (required field)	147
Alternate Phone (optional)	148
Fax (optional)	148
Website (optional)	148
5.6 Bank Information	148
Bank Name (required field)	148
Account Holder (optional)	149
IBAN (required field)	149
BIC/SWIFT (required field)	150
SEPA Creditor ID (optional)	150
5.7 Invoice Settings	150
Invoice Number Pattern (required field)	150
Current Invoice Number (required field)	152
5.8 Quote and Reminder Settings	153
Quote Number Pattern	153
Current Quote Number	153
Reminder Number Pattern	153
Current Reminder Number	154
5.9 Upload Logo	154
Select Logo	154

Logo Preview	154
Delete Logo	155
Recommended Logo Formats	155
5.10 Set as Default	155
Set Default	156
5.11 Save Tenant	156
Save	156
Go Back Without Saving	157
5.12 Edit Tenant	157
Open Tenant	157
Edit Fields	158
Change Number Pattern	158
5.13 Delete Tenant	159
Prerequisites	159
Perform Deletion	159
What Gets Deleted?	159
What Remains?	159
5.14 Switch Tenant	160
Quick Tenant Switch in Menu Bar	160
Select Tenant When Creating Documents	161
5.15 Understanding Numbering Schemes	161
Why Separate Numbering Schemes?	161
Number Example	162
5.16 Practical Workflows	162
Workflow 1: Create First Company (10–15 minutes, one-time)	162
Workflow 2: Add Second Company (5–10 minutes)	163
Workflow 3: Switch Tenant and Create Invoice (1–2 minutes)	164
5.17 Pro Tips for Tenant Management	165
5.18 Payment Profiles	166
What Is a Payment Profile?	166
Create and Manage Payment Profiles	166
Select Which Profile Appears on a Document	167
QR Codes on Invoices	167
5.19 Document Templates	168
What Is a Document Template?	168
Opening the Template Editor	168
Available Layout Options	169
Select or Duplicate a Preset Template	170
Live Preview	171
Best Practices	171
6. Customer Management	171
6.1 Customer Concept	172
Why Customer Master Data Is Important	172
6.2 Customer List	173
List Overview	173

Search Customers	173
Filter Customers	174
Empty Customer List	175
6.3 Create Customer	176
Create New Customer	176
6.4 Customer Information	176
Company Name (required field)	176
Owner (optional)	177
Salutation (optional)	178
Title (optional)	178
Internal Notes (optional)	178
Customer Number (required, unique)	178
Customer Reference / Leitweg-ID (optional)	179
6.5 Address	179
Street (required field)	179
Address Supplement (optional)	180
Postal Code (required field)	180
City (required field)	181
State (optional)	182
Country (required field)	183
6.6 Contact Information	184
Billing Email	184
General Email (optional)	184
Main Phone	185
Alternate Phone (optional)	186
Fax (optional)	186
6.7 Tax Information	186
VAT ID (optional)	186
Tax ID / Tax Number (optional)	187
VAT Rate (%) (required field)	187
Currency (required field)	188
6.8 Invoice Settings	190
Invoice Language (required field)	190
E-Invoice (required field)	191
When Which Format?	193
6.9 Save Customer	194
Save	194
Go Back Without Saving	195
6.10 Edit Customer	196
Open Customer	196
Edit Fields	196
Correct Address	196
6.11 Delete Customer	197
Prerequisites	197
Perform Deletion	197
What Happens When Deleting?	198

6.12 Customer Count	198
6.13 Practical Workflows	199
Workflow 1: Create First Customer (5 minutes)	199
Workflow 2: Create Customer with E-Invoice (5–7 minutes)	200
Workflow 3: International Customers with Reverse Charge (7–10 minutes)	201
Workflow 4: Update Customer Data (2–3 minutes)	202
6.14 Pro Tips for Customer Management	202
6.15 Customer Import/Export (CSV)	203
Export Customers (CSV)...	203
Import Customers (CSV)...	203
Mapping and preview	204
Required fields (for import)	204
Duplicate detection	204
7. Product Management	204
7.1 Product Concept	205
7.2 Product List	205
7.3 Create and Edit Products	205
Required fields	205
Optional fields	206
7.4 Using Products in Sales Documents	206
Add line item from product	206
Apply a product to an existing line item	206
View product details	206
7.5 Product Import/Export (CSV)	206
Export Products (CSV)...	207
Import Products (CSV)...	207
Mapping and preview	207
Required fields	207
Duplicate detection	207
8. Text Snippets	208
8.1 Text Snippets Concept	208
Why Use Text Snippets?	208
8.2 Typical Use Cases	209
Payment Terms	209
Terms and Conditions	210
Delivery Terms	211
Warranty Information	212
Project Description	212
8.3 Text Snippets List	213
List Overview	213
Empty Text Snippets List	213
8.4 Create Text Snippet	214
Create New Text Snippet	214

8.5 Name (required field)	214
8.6 Content (required field)	214
Plain Text	214
Markdown Formatting	215
8.7 Markdown Syntax	215
Bold Text	215
Italic Text	216
Headings	217
Large Heading	218
Medium Heading	218
Small Heading	218
Bullet Lists (unordered)	218
Numbered Lists (ordered)	219
Nested Lists	220
Links	221
Line Breaks	222
Combinations	223
8.8 Markdown Preview	224
Live Preview in Form	224
8.9 Save Text Snippet	225
Save	225
Go Back Without Saving	225
8.10 Edit Text Snippet	226
Open Text Snippet	226
Edit Fields	226
8.11 Delete Text Snippet	227
Prerequisites	227
Perform Deletion	227
What Happens When Deleting?	227
8.12 Insert Text Snippets into Documents	228
Quick Overview	228
8.13 Practical Workflows	229
Workflow 1: Create Standard Text Snippets (15–20 minutes, one-time)	229
Workflow 2: Create Multilingual Text Snippets (10–15 minutes)	230
Workflow 3: Update Text Snippet (2–3 minutes)	231
Workflow 4: Test Markdown Formatting (5 minutes)	231
8.14 Pro Tips for Text Snippets	232
8.15 Auto-Assignment Rules	233
What Is Auto-Assignment?	233
When Auto-Assignment Saves Time	233
Configuring Auto-Assignment on a Text Snippet	233
How to Test That Auto-Assignment Works	235
Disabling or Overriding Auto-Assignment on a Specific Document	235

9. Settings	235
9.1 Open Settings	236
Way 1: Via Sidebar	236
Way 2: Via Menu Bar	236
9.2 Settings Overview	237
9.3 Appearance	237
Design Mode	237
Light Design (Light Mode)	238
Dark Design (Dark Mode)	239
9.4 Backup	239
Why Backups Are Important	239
Frequency	239
Backup Directory	240
Backup Retention	241
Note Text	242
Backup Reminder on Exit	243
Encrypted Backups	243
9.5 Documents	245
Document Folder	245
Document Name Pattern (optional)	247
Examples for Document Name Patterns	248
Pattern Validation	251
Special Characters in Parameters	251
GoBD Archive (Archive Root)	252
Write Protection (WORM)	253
DATEV (Booking Batch Export)	253
S3-Compatible Archive Storage	253
9.6 Updates	255
Automatically Check for Updates	255
What Happens with Update Checking Enabled?	255
Manual Update Check	255
9.7 Email	256
SMTP (Outgoing Mail)	256
IMAP (Copy to Sent Folder)	257
Test Configuration	257
9.8 Document Emails	257
Templates (Subject & Body)	257
Token List and Insertion	258
Preview	258
Language Variants	258
9.9 User Management	258
9.10 Error Handling	259
9.11 Discard Invalid Settings	259
9.12 Reset Settings	260
9.13 Practical Workflows	260
Workflow 1: Initial Setup (5–10 minutes, one-time)	260

Workflow 2: Backup Strategy for Important Data (10 minutes)	261
Workflow 3: Document Organization by Customer (5 minutes)	262
Workflow 4: Automatically Switch Design by Time of Day (1 minute)	262
9.14 Pro Tips for Settings	263
9.15 Server (Operating Mode)	264
9.16 Admin Area	264
9.17 Tax Rules	265
What Is a Tax Rule?	265
Built-In Tax Presets	266
Automatic Tax Selection Based on Customer Location	266
Create a Custom Tax Rule	267
How Tax Rules Interact with Customers and Documents	268
Common Scenarios in Plain Language	268
9.18 Number Ranges	268
What Are Number Ranges?	268
Opening Number Ranges	269
Document Types and Their Ranges	269
Fields of a Number Range	269
Live Preview	270
Year-End Rollover	270
Best Practices for Naming Schemes	271
[!] Important: Consequences of Changing a Number Range	271
10. GoBD Compliance	271
10.1 What Is GoBD?	272
Definition	272
Why Is GoBD Important?	272
10.2 The Seven GoBD Principles	273
1. Orderliness	273
2. Completeness	273
3. Accuracy	273
4. Timely Bookings and Records	273
5. Immutability	273
6. Traceability	274
7. Auditability	274
10.3 The Audit Log	275
What Is the Audit Log?	275
How Does the Audit Log Work?	275
Cryptographic Hash Chain	276
What Is Logged?	277
XRechnung Export: Two Separate Entries	278
10.4 View Audit Log	278
Display Audit Log for a Document	278
Export Complete Audit Log	279
10.5 Export for Tax Audits	279

Why an Export?	279
Create Export	280
Export Package Structure	282
CSV Format	282
Verification JSON	283
README for Auditors	284
10.6 Verify Audit Log	284
Why Verify?	284
Verify Complete Chain	284
Verify Export Archive	286
10.7 Immutability: Why Invoices Cannot Be Edited	289
The Problem: Retroactive Changes	289
The Solution: Immutability	289
Create Correction Invoice	289
10.8 Sequential Numbering	290
Why Gap-Free Numbering?	290
How the Application Ensures This	290
Avoid Gaps	291
10.9 Retention Obligation	291
10-Year Rule	291
How the Application Supports This	291
Archiving Strategy	292
10.10 Data Access for Tax Auditors (Z1, Z2, Z3)	292
The Three Access Levels	292
Z1: Direct Access	293
Z2: Export Filtered Data	293
Z3: Z3/GDPdU Export	293
10.11 Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ)	294
Question 1: Can I change a published invoice?	294
Question 2: What happens if I delete the audit log?	294
Question 3: Do I have to create an archive every month?	294
Question 4: What if verification fails?	294
Question 5: Can I delete drafts without violating GoBD compliance?	294
Question 6: What if I discover an error in an invoice after 10 years?	294
Question 7: Do I have to print the audit log for the tax auditor?	294
Question 8: What if my computer crashes and the database is damaged?	295
10.12 Practical Workflows	295
Workflow 1: Create Monthly Export for Accounting (10 minutes)	295
Workflow 2: Before Tax Audit: Prepare Data (30 minutes)	295
Workflow 3: Regular Verification (Quarterly, 15 minutes)	296
10.13 Pro Tips for GoBD Compliance	297

11. Appendix	297
11.1 Glossary	298
A	298
B	298
C	298
D	298
E	299
G	299
H	299
I	300
M	300
N	300
O	301
P	301
Q	301
R	301
S	302
T	302
V	302
X	303
Z	303
11.2 Keyboard Shortcuts	303
Global Keyboard Shortcuts	303
Menu Keyboard Shortcuts	304
Document Editor	304
Markdown Editor (Text Blocks)	304
11.3 Troubleshooting	305
Problem 1: Application Won't Start	305
Problem 2: Database Locked	305
Problem 3: PDF Export Fails	306
Problem 4: XRechnung Validation Fails	307
Problem 5: Verification Fails (Hash Chain Broken)	307
Problem 6: Payment Reminder Cannot Be Created	308
Problem 7: Demo Data Cannot Be Deleted	309
Problem 8: Application Is Very Slow	309
11.4 Technical Information	310
System Requirements	310
Database Storage Location	310
Open Database Folder	311
Log File (Debug Information)	311
Technologies Used	312
Version Information	312
11.5 License and Copyright	313
License	313
License Grant	313
Restrictions	313

Full License	313
11.6 Support and Contact	313
Online Documentation	313
Support Contact	314
Updates	314
Community	314
11.7 About This Documentation	314
Version	314
Authors	314
Feedback	315
Change History	315
11.8 Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ)	315
General	315
Client-Server Mode	316
11.9 Migrating to a New Computer	317
Step 1: Create a Backup on the Old Computer	317
Step 2: Install AGYNAMIX Invoicer on the New Computer	317
Step 3: Restore Your Backup on the New Computer	317
Step 4: Reconfigure Local Settings	318
Step 5: Verify Your Data	318
Notes on License Transfer	318

AGYNAMIX Invoicer - User Manual

Version 1.3.0

Date: February 2026

About AGYNAMIX Invoicer

AGYNAMIX Invoicer is a professional desktop application for freelancers and small businesses to create and manage quotes, invoices, and time tracking. The software was specifically developed for the requirements of the German market and complies with all GoBD guidelines for audit-proof archiving.

Key Features

- **Sales Documents:** Quotes, invoices, correction invoices, and payment reminders
 - **Time Tracking:** Time sheets with direct invoicing
 - **Multi-Tenant:** Manage multiple companies in one database
 - **GoBD-Compliant:** Audit-proof archiving and audit log
 - **E-Invoicing:** Support for ZUGFeRD and XRechnung
 - **Offline-Capable:** No cloud connection required, all data remains local
-

System Requirements

Operating System

- **Windows:** Windows 10 or higher
- **macOS:** macOS 11 (Big Sur) or higher
- **Linux:** Current distributions (Ubuntu 20.04+, Fedora 34+, etc.)

Hardware

- **Processor:** 64-bit processor
- **Memory:** Minimum 4 GB RAM (8 GB recommended)
- **Hard Drive:** 500 MB free space for application
- **Additional:** Sufficient storage space for documents and backups

Software

- **PDF Viewer:** For document preview (e.g., Adobe Reader, Preview, Evince)

[i] **Note:** Java is bundled with the application – you do not need to install anything separately.

About This Manual

This manual is aimed at freelancers and small businesses who want to use AGYNAMIX Invoicer to manage their invoicing. It assumes you already have basic experience with invoicing and are familiar with typical business processes.

Manual Structure

The manual is divided into thematic chapters, each covering a functional area of the application:

1. **Menu Bar** - All menu functions in detail
2. **Dashboard** - Overview and key metrics
3. **Documents** - Create and manage quotes and invoices
4. **Time Tracking** - Record and bill time sheets
5. **Tenants** - Manage company data
6. **Customers** - Maintain customer master data
7. **Products** - Maintain product master data and reuse in documents
8. **Text Snippets** - Manage reusable texts
9. **Settings** - Configure application
10. **GoBD Compliance** - Understand audit-proof archiving
11. **Appendix** - Glossary, troubleshooting, and additional information

Conventions in This Manual

Typographic Conventions: - Menu Item - UI elements such as buttons, menus, and fields - **Bold** - Important terms and highlights - *Italic* - Emphasis and notes - Code - Paths, filenames, patterns

Symbols: - [»] **Efficiency Tip:** Time-saving workflows - [*] **Best Practice:** Recommended procedures - [!] **Important:** Critical notes on data security/compliance - [i] **Trick:** Lesser-known features - [~] **Workflow Tip:** Optimized processes

Screenshots: - Screenshots are marked with [Screenshot: Title] and caption - Numbering is automatic as Figure X

Quick Start Guide

This quick start guide walks you through the first steps with AGYNAMIX Invoicer – from installation to your first invoice.

[i] New here? Try demo data first. Before entering your own real data, you can load a ready-made demo database to explore all features. See Step 0: Load Demo Data (Optional) below.

About GoBD: GoBD is the German tax authority's set of rules for electronic bookkeeping – it ensures invoices are stored in a tamper-proof, auditable way. AGYNAMIX Invoicer handles all of this automatically; you just need to know which actions are permanent (like publishing an invoice).

Step 1: Installation

Takes about 2 minutes.

1. Download the installation file for your operating system:
 - **Windows:** .msi or .exe installer
 - **macOS:** .dmg disk image
 - **Linux:** .deb, .rpm, or .AppImage
2. Run the installation:
 - **Windows:** Double-click the installation file and follow the wizard
 - **macOS:** Open the .dmg and drag the application to the Applications folder
 - **Linux:** Install the package via your package manager or run the .AppImage directly
3. Start the application:
 - Via Start Menu (Windows), Launchpad (macOS), or Applications Menu (Linux)

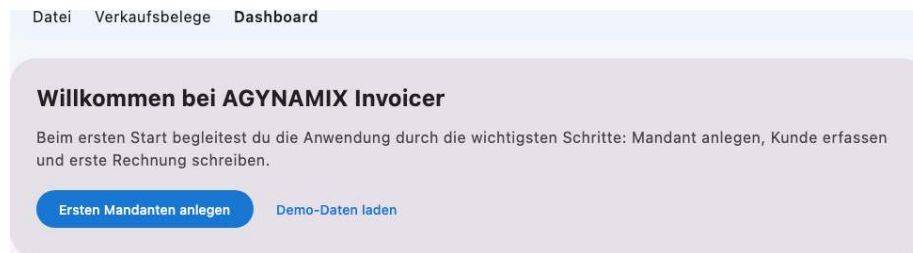


Figure 1: The welcome screen when first starting AGYNAMIX Invoicer

Step 2: Create Your First Tenant

Takes about 5 minutes.

A **tenant** is your company or business profile – think of it as a folder that holds all your company details, bank account information, and invoice numbering. Most people only need one tenant, but you can add more if you manage multiple businesses.

A tenant represents your company or business. This is where all company data, bank details, and invoice numbering schemes are managed.

1. On first start, the dashboard shows the welcome area
2. Click **Create your first tenant**
3. Fill out the form with your company data:

Required Fields: - Company name - Complete address (street, postal code, city, country) - Tax number and VAT ID - Phone and email - Bank details (IBAN and BIC)

Invoice Numbering Schemes: - Define patterns for invoice and quote numbers - Example: RE- $\{year\}$ - $\{doc_no\}$ results in RE-2025-1 - Set the starting number (e.g., 1 or 1000)

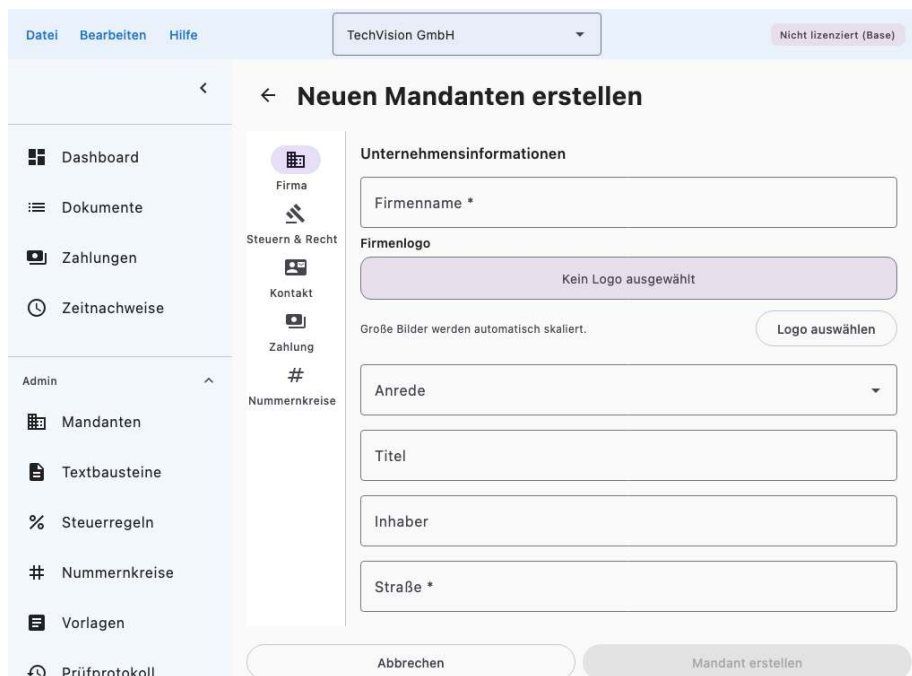


Figure 2: Form for creating a new tenant with all required fields

4. Optional: Upload your company logo (recommended for professional appearance)
5. Enable Set as default tenant (especially important for the first tenant)
6. Click Save

[!] **Important:** Invoice numbering schemes should be configured correctly before the first invoice, as they cannot be changed after publication.

[i] **Tip:** Use the {year} variable in the numbering pattern to start a new numbering scheme each year (e.g., RE-2025-1, RE-2026-1).

Step 3: Create Your First Customer

Takes about 2 minutes.

Customers are the invoice recipients. For each customer, you store address, contact details, and billing information.

1. Click **Create a customer** on the dashboard
2. Or navigate via the sidebar to **Customers** → **Create New** button
3. Fill out the customer form:

Required Fields: - Company name (or first/last name for individuals) - Complete address - VAT rate (default: 19%) - Currency (default: EUR) - Document language (German or English)

Optional Fields: - VAT ID (important for intra-community supplies) - Email and phone - E-invoice type (ZUGFeRD, XRechnung, or none)

The screenshot shows a web application interface for creating a new customer. The top navigation bar includes 'Datei', 'Bearbeiten', 'Hilfe', and a dropdown menu for 'TechVision GmbH'. The main content area is titled 'Neuen Kunden erstellen' and features a sidebar with navigation options: Dashboard, Dokumente, Zahlungen, Zeitnachweise, Kunden, Artikel, and Bilder. The form is divided into two sections: 'Kundeninformationen' and 'Personendaten'. In the 'Kundeninformationen' section, there are three radio buttons: 'Firma' (selected), 'Öffentlicher Dienst', and 'Privatperson'. Below this is a text input field for 'Firmenname *'. In the 'Personendaten' section, there are three dropdown menus: 'Anrede (optional)', 'Titel (optional)', and 'Inhaber (optional)'. Below these are two text input fields: 'Kundennummer' (with the value '50100') and 'Käuferreferenz'. At the bottom of the form, there are two buttons: 'Abbrechen' and 'Kunde erstellen'.

Figure 3: Customer form with all relevant fields for invoicing

4. Click **Save**

[*] **Best Practice:** Maintain your customers' VAT IDs carefully – they are important for correct tax calculation and VAT returns.

Step 4: Create Your First Invoice

Takes about 3 minutes once you have a tenant and customer.

Now you can create your first invoice.

1. Navigate via the sidebar to Documents
2. Click Create New → New Invoice
3. Fill out the invoice form:

Document Data: - Select the customer from the dropdown - Invoice date (pre-filled with today) - Due date (default: 14 days after invoice date) - Currency is inherited from the customer

Add Invoice Items: 1. Click Add Item 2. Description of service/product 3. Quantity 4. Unit price (net) 5. VAT rate (pre-filled from customer) 6. Repeat for all items

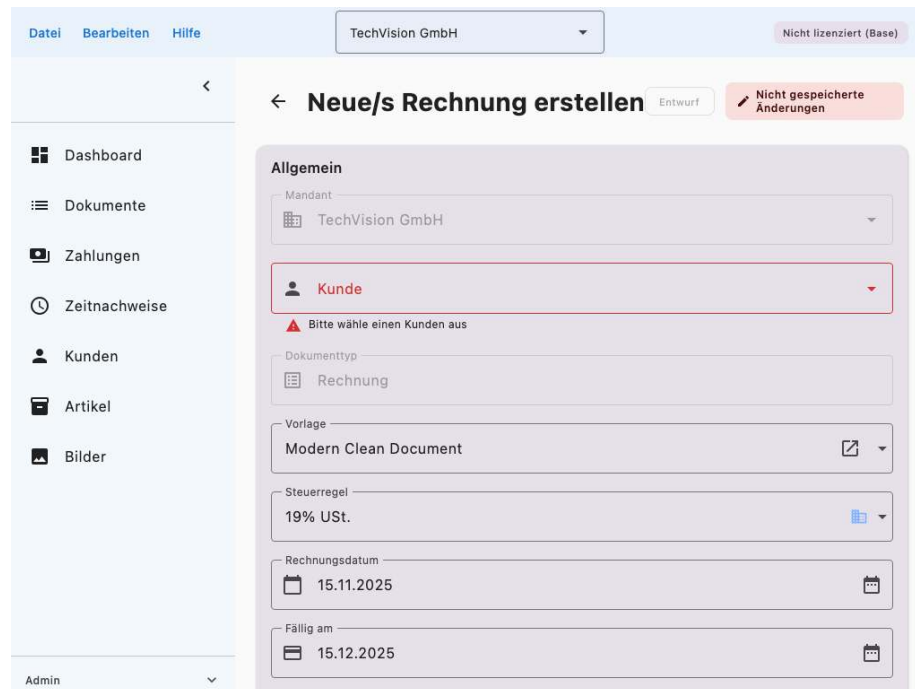


Figure 4: New invoice form with areas for customer data, items, and text snippets

Text Snippets (optional): - Introduction: Text before the invoice items
- Conclusion: Text after the invoice items (e.g., payment terms) - You can select existing text snippets from the dropdown or enter directly

Markdown Support: - **Bold:** ****Text**** - *Italic:* *Text* - Lists, headings, etc. are supported

4. Click Save to save the invoice as a draft
5. Use Preview to check the result

[!] **Important:** Drafts only have a temporary draft number and can still be edited.

Step 5: Publish and Export Invoice

Takes less than 1 minute.

When the invoice is ready, you must publish it to receive a final invoice number.

1. Check all information once more
2. Click Next Step → Publish
3. The invoice now receives its final invoice number (e.g., RE-2025-1)
4. The status changes from Draft to Published

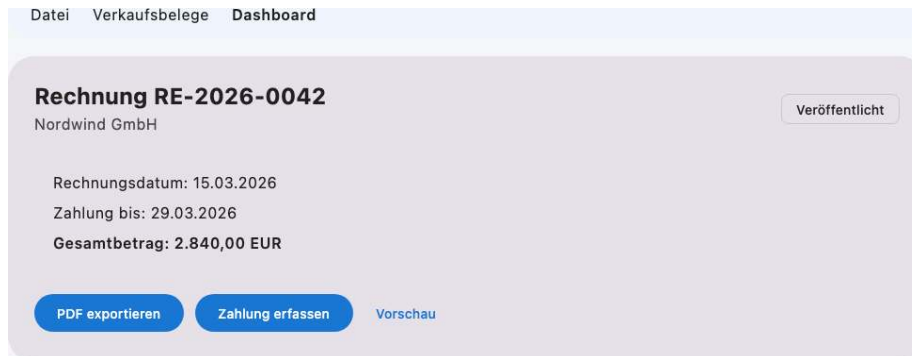


Figure 5: A published invoice with final invoice number and all action options

[!] **Important:** After publication, the invoice is immutable for GoBD reasons. Corrections are only possible via correction invoices.

Export PDF: 1. Click the preview icon (eye icon) or in the menu on Preview
2. The PDF is automatically saved in the configured documents folder
3. The file opens in your PDF viewer
4. You can now send the file via email or print it

[i] **Tip:** Configure the documents folder in the settings before exporting your first invoice. This way, all PDFs are automatically stored in the right place.

Step 6: Record Payment

Takes less than 1 minute.

When the customer has paid the invoice, record the payment:

1. Open the invoice by clicking Edit
2. Click Next Step → Mark as paid
3. Enter the payment date
4. Optional: Record the actual amount received (for partial payments)
5. Click Record payment
6. The status changes to Fully paid



Zahlung erfassen

Rechnung RE-2026-0042 · Restbetrag 2.840,00 EUR

Betrag
2.840,00

Zahlungsdatum
16.03.2026

Buchungsdatum
16.03.2026

Abbrechen **Zahlung speichern**

Figure 6: Dialog for recording a payment with date and amount

[*] **Best Practice:** Record payments promptly to keep track of outstanding receivables. The dashboard shows you all open and overdue invoices.

Step 0: Load Demo Data (Optional)

If you want to explore AGYNAMIX Invoicer before entering your own data, load the demo database first. It takes about 30 seconds and gives you a fully working environment with sample invoices, customers, and tenants to click around in.

1. On the welcome screen of the dashboard: Click Load Demo Data
2. Or via the menu: Edit → Load Demo Data (on first start)
3. The database is filled with realistic sample data:
 - 2 sample tenants (German companies)
 - 100 sample customers

- Approx. 300 documents (quotes, invoices, payment reminders)
- Time sheets with entries

[i] **Tip:** Demo data is ideal for exploring the application without having to enter your own data. You can remove it anytime via Edit → Delete Demo Data, or simply continue setting up your real data in parallel by switching databases.

Next Steps

After this quick start, you can:

1. **Explore the dashboard:** Get an overview of your key metrics
2. **Create text snippets:** Create reusable texts for introductions and conclusions
3. **Configure settings:**
 - Set up backup strategy
 - Configure document path with naming pattern
 - Customize theme (light/dark)
4. **Add more customers:** Build your customer base
5. **Use time tracking:** Record working hours and bill them directly
6. **Understand GoBD compliance:** Learn about the archiving features

[?] **Continue reading:** The following chapters of this manual cover all functions in detail. Use the table of contents to jump directly to the topics relevant to you.

Help and Support

In the Application

- **Guided Tour:** Help → Start guided tour for an interactive introduction
- **Documentation:** Help → Documentation opens the online documentation
- **Log:** Help → Show log for technical problems

Online Resources

- **Website:** <https://www.agynamix.de>
- **Support Email:** support@agynamix.de
- **Updates:** The application automatically checks for new versions

Data Location

Your data is stored locally on your computer:

- **Windows:** %LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\invoicer_db.db
- **macOS:** ~/Library/Application Support/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db
- **Linux:** ~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db

[!] **Important:** Create regular backups! Configure automatic backups in the settings to prevent data loss.

Copyright and License

Copyright © 2025 AGYNAMIX

All rights reserved.

AGYNAMIX Invoicer is proprietary software. Use is only permitted with a valid license.

This manual may be copied for personal use. Distribution to third parties or commercial use without express permission is not permitted.

Trademarks: - AGYNAMIX is a registered trademark of AGYNAMIX GmbH
- All other mentioned brands are the property of their respective owners

Disclaimer: The information in this manual was created with the greatest care. Nevertheless, errors cannot be completely excluded. No liability is assumed for damages resulting from errors in this manual.

Version History

Version 1.3.0 (February 2026)

- Updated manual for Invoicer v1.3.0
- Added documentation for encrypted backups (Chapter 9.4)
- Added S3 archive backend documentation (Chapter 9.5)
- Added auto-assign text blocks documentation (Chapter 8.15)
- Added enhanced full-text search documentation (Chapter 3.2)
- Added text-only line items documentation (Chapter 3.4)
- Added multiple payment profiles and QR codes (Chapter 5.18)
- Added document template customization (Chapter 5.19)
- Added undo payment documentation (Chapter 3.8)
- Added related documents panel (Chapter 3.19)
- Added payment overview screen (Chapter 3.20)

- Added tax rules and admin section (Chapter 9.15-9.16)
- Added number ranges documentation (Chapter 9.17)
- Added new Chapter 12: Operating Modes (Standalone / Host / Client)
- Added glossary terms for client-server mode
- Added FAQ section (Chapter 11)
- Added migrating to a new computer guide (Chapter 11)

Version 1.2.0 (January 12, 2026)

- Updated the manual for Invoicer v1.2.0
- Added documentation for email settings (SMTP/IMAP) and document email templates
- Added “send document via email” workflow documentation
- Added user management documentation
- Extended customer/tenant chapters with additional fields and email distinctions

Good luck with AGYNAMIX Invoicer!

We wish you efficient work and clear invoice management. If you have any questions or suggestions, please feel free to contact us.

1. Menu Bar

The menu bar is located at the top of the application window and provides access to important functions that are not accessible via the sidebar. It consists of three main menus (File, Edit, Help) as well as the tenant selection in the center.

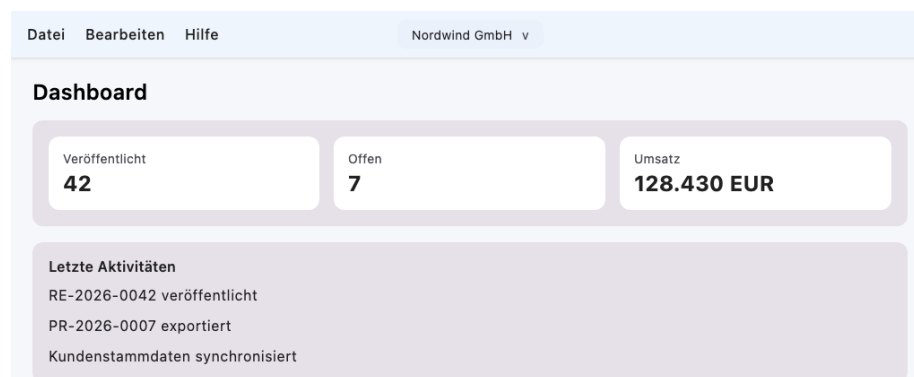


Figure 7: The menu bar with all three menus and the central tenant selection

1.1 File Menu

The File menu contains functions for data backup, restore, and GoBD-compliant archiving.

Some actions are grouped in submenus: - File → Export → ... - File → Import → ...

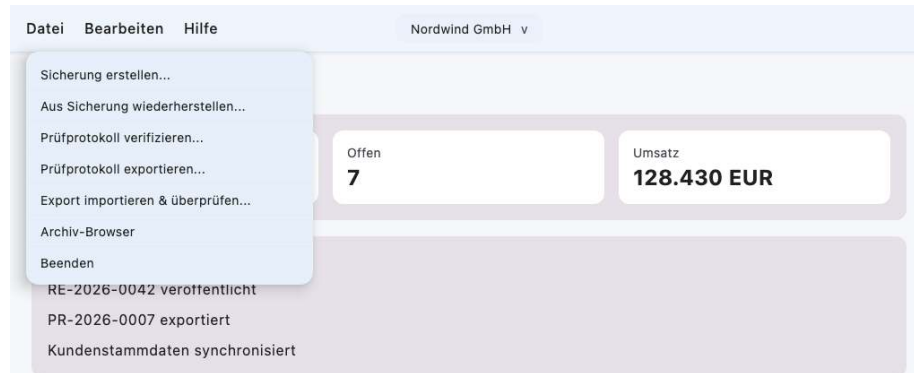


Figure 8: The opened File menu with all available options

Create Backup...

Creates a complete backup of your database.

Function: - Saves the complete database in a single file - Contains all tenants, customers, documents, time sheets, and settings - Automatically compressed (ZIP format) - Filename contains timestamp: `invoicer-
{production|sandbox}-YYYY-MM-DD-HHMMSS.zip`

Usage: 1. Click File → Create Backup... 2. Choose a destination directory in the dialog 3. The backup is created and saved in the selected directory 4. A success message confirms the created backup

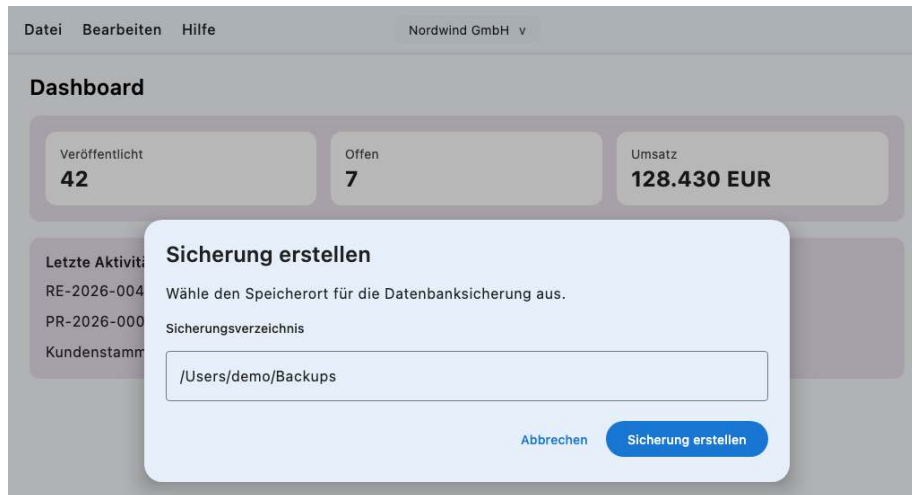


Figure 9: Dialog for selecting the storage location for the database backup

When to create backups: - Before major changes (e.g., bulk editing, updates) - Regularly (daily/weekly) - see automatic backups in settings - Before system maintenance or operating system updates - Before switching to a new computer

[!] **Important:** Backups should be stored in a secure location outside your computer (external hard drive, NAS, cloud storage). In case of hard drive failure, local backups are not accessible.

[i] **Tip:** Configure automatic backups in the settings so you never forget to create a backup. The application automatically creates a backup when closing.

Restore from Backup...

Restores a previously created backup.

Function: - Completely overwrites the current database - All current data will be lost - Imports all tenants, customers, documents, and settings from the backup

Usage: 1. Click File → Restore from Backup... 2. **Warning:** A dialog warns you that all current data will be overwritten 3. Confirm with Restore or cancel with Cancel 4. Select the backup file (.zip) in the file selection dialog 5. The application loads the backup and restarts 6. After restart, you will see the data from the backup

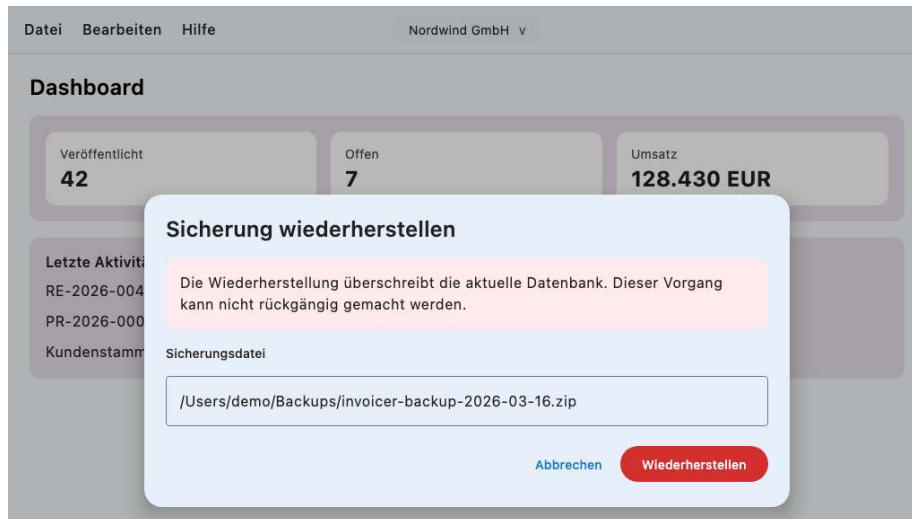


Figure 10: Warning dialog before overwriting the current database

Use Cases: - After data loss or corruption - When switching to a new computer - After accidental deletion of important data - During migration from an old to a new installation

[!] **Important:** The restore cannot be undone. Create a backup of the current database beforehand if you want to access it later.

[*] **Best Practice:** Regularly test whether your backups work by performing a restore in a test installation.

Verify Audit Log...

Checks the integrity of the internal audit log (transaction log).

Function: - Verifies the cryptographic hash chain of all audit log entries - Ensures that no entries were subsequently changed or deleted - GoBD-compliant verification of immutability - Verification is performed on a per-tenant basis

Usage: 1. Click File → Verify Audit Log... 2. Select the tenant to verify 3. Click Start Verification 4. The application checks all audit log entries 5. The result is displayed: - **Valid:** All entries are unchanged - **Invalid:** Manipulations were detected

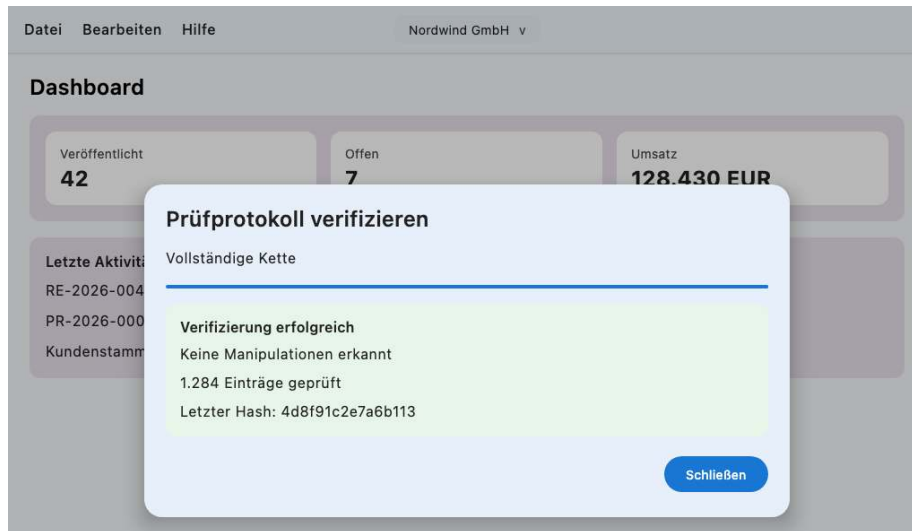


Figure 11: Success message after successful verification of the audit log

Result Details: - **Total entries checked:** Number of verified log entries - **Sequence range:** First and last sequence number - **Chain status:** Valid or Invalid - **Sequence gaps:** Missing entries (should not occur) - **Hash errors:** List of entries with invalid hashes

When to verify: - During tax audits (upon auditor's request) - After unusual system events - Regularly for quality assurance (e.g., annually) - Before submission to external archiving

[i] **Trick:** You can perform verification at any time – it doesn't change any data and only takes a few seconds.

Export Audit Log...

Exports the audit log to a GoBD-compliant archive.

Function: - Creates a ZIP archive with all audit log entries for a time period - Contains all associated PDF documents - Hash chain for verifying integrity - Format complies with GoBD requirements for external archiving

Usage: 1. Click File → Export → Export Audit Log... 2. Select the **tenant** 3. Select the **time period:** - Month and year (e.g., November 2025) 4. The **export path** is shown (automatically determined based on archive root) 5. Click Start Export 6. Wait until the export is complete 7. The success message shows the file path 8. Optional: Use "Copy To" to copy the archive to an additional location

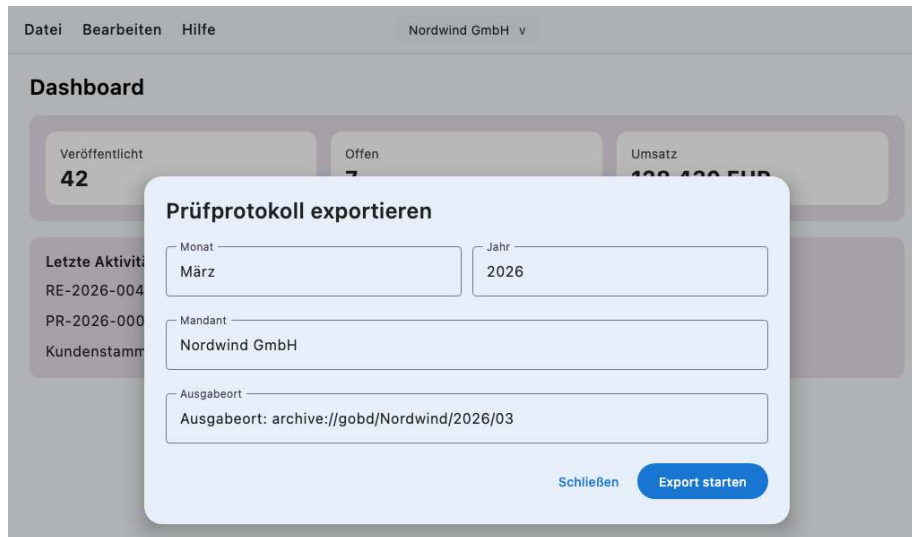


Figure 12: Dialog for exporting the audit log with time period and tenant selection

Archive contents: - audit_log_YYYYMM-YYYYMM.csv - All audit log entries in CSV format (UTF-8 with BOM) - audit_log_YYYYMM-YYYYMM_verification.json - Verification metadata with hashes - documents/ - Folder with all exported PDF documents - README.txt - German instructions for archive structure

Filename: - Format: gobd_export_{tenant}_{startYYYYMM}-{endYYYYMM}_{hash16}.zip - Example: gobd_export_my_company_202511-202511_a1b2c3d4e5f6g7h8.zip - A sidecar .meta.txt file is also created for integrity verification

When to export: - **Monthly/Quarterly:** For regular archiving - **Annually:** At year-end - **During tax audit:** Upon request from the tax office - **During operational audit:** For submission to auditor - **Before major changes:** As additional backup

[!] **Important:** GoBD requires audit logs to be retained for at least 10 years. Archive the exports on a secure storage medium and create copies in different locations.

[~] **Workflow Tip:** At the end of the month, automatically export the audit log and archive it together with the PDF invoices. This way you meet all GoBD requirements.

Export Customers (CSV)...

Exports your customer master data as a CSV file.

Usage: 1. Click File → Export → Export Customers (CSV)... 2. Select a destination folder 3. The application creates a customers-export-...csv file in that folder

[?] **Continue reading:** Details on CSV import/export are described in Chapter 6 (Customers).

Export Products (CSV)...

Exports your product master data as a CSV file.

Usage: 1. Click File → Export → Export Products (CSV)... 2. Select a destination folder 3. The application creates a products-export-...csv file in that folder

[?] **Continue reading:** Details on CSV import/export are described in Chapter 7 (Products).

Import & Verify Export...

Imports and verifies a previously exported audit log archive.

Function: - Reads in a GoBD export archive (.zip) - Checks the hash chain of the audit log - Verifies all contained PDF documents - Shows detailed verification results

Usage: 1. Click File → Import → Import & Verify Export... 2. Click Select File 3. Select a previously exported archive (.zip) 4. Click Start Verification 5. Wait until verification is complete 6. Check the result

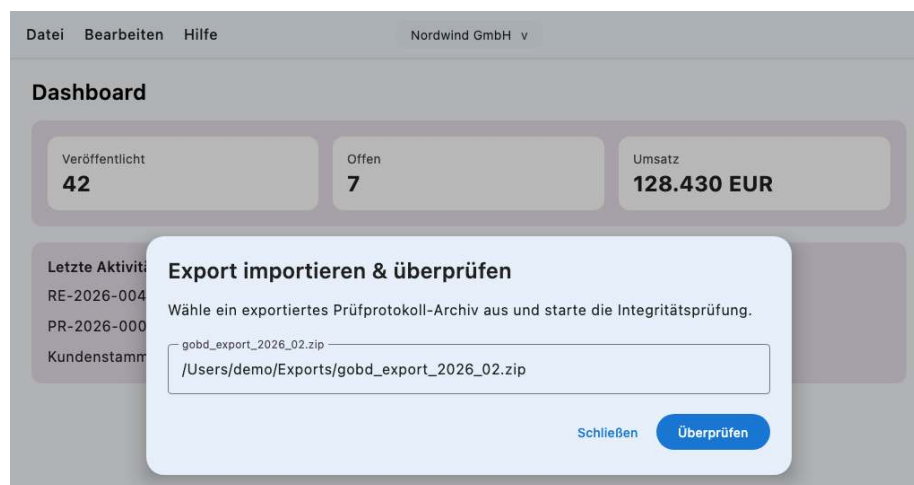


Figure 13: Dialog for selecting and verifying an imported audit log archive

Verification Results:

Chain Integrity: - **Total entries:** Number of log entries in the archive - **Sequence range:** First and last sequence number - **Chain status:** Valid (✓) or Invalid (✗) - **Sequence gaps:** Missing entries (normal for date range exports) - **Chain errors:** List of entries with invalid hashes

Document Verification: - **Documents in archive:** Number of contained PDFs - **Verified documents:** Number of successfully checked PDFs - **Document errors:** List of documents with verification errors

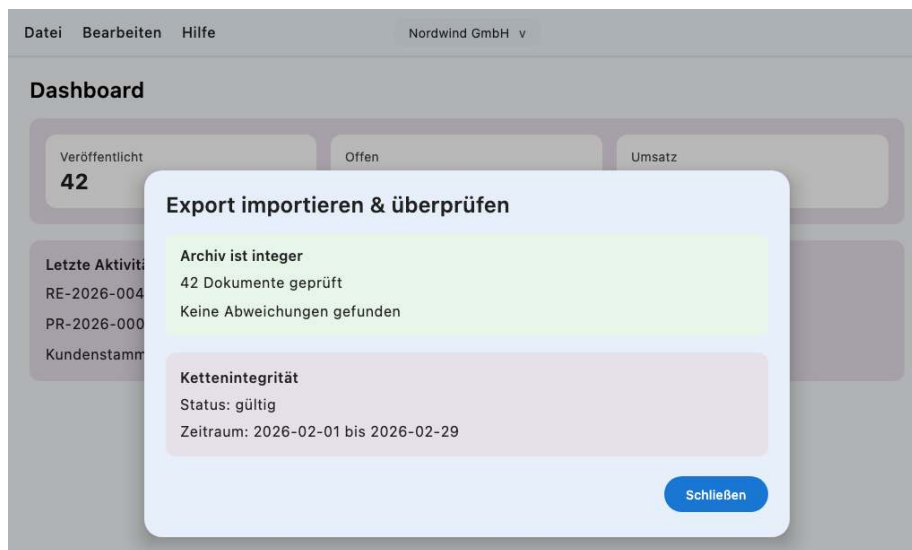


Figure 14: Successful verification of an archive with all details on chain integrity

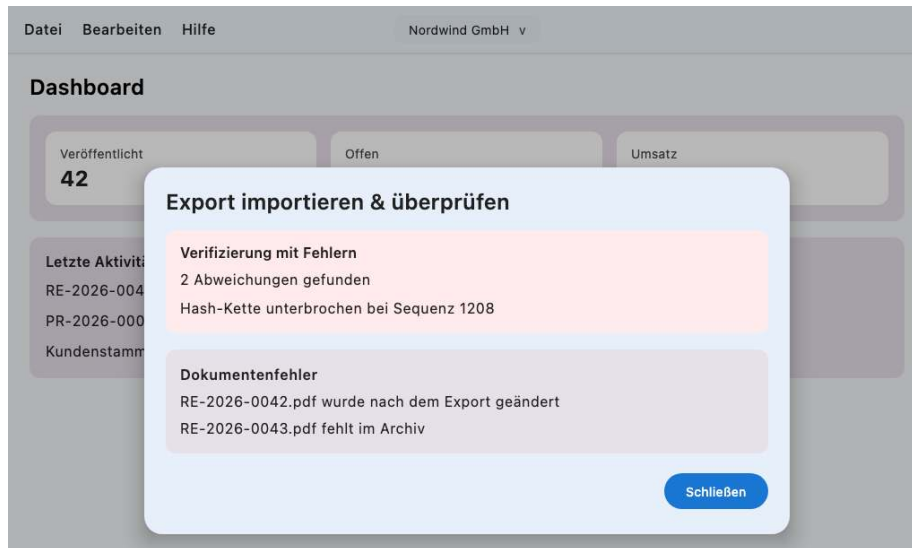


Figure 15: Verification with detected errors – documents were subsequently modified

Interpreting the Results:

[+] **Valid Archive:** - Chain status: Valid - No hash errors - All documents verified - → Archive is unchanged and legally secure

[!] **Sequence Gaps in Date Range Export:** - Normal when only a time period was exported - Entries outside the time period are missing from the sequence - Integrity of included entries remains verifiable - Note text explains the gaps

× **Invalid Archive:** - Chain status: Invalid - Hash errors present - Documents were modified - → Archive was tampered with or is corrupted

Use Cases: - **During tax audit:** Proof of immutability of archives - **After archiving:** Check whether archiving was successful - **Before sharing:** Verification before handover to accountant/auditor - **After storage media change:** Check after migration to new media

[*] **Best Practice:** Verify audit log archives immediately after export and before sharing. This ensures that the archives were created correctly and are immutable.

[i] **Tip:** Keep the original archive together with a verification protocol (screenshot). In case of inquiries, you can prove that the archive was valid at the time of creation.

Import Customers (CSV)...

Imports customers from a CSV file.

Usage: 1. Click `File` → `Import` → `Import Customers (CSV)...` 2. Select the CSV file 3. Review the mapping and preview 4. Start the import

[?] **Continue reading:** Details on CSV import/export are described in Chapter 6 (Customers).

Import Products (CSV)...

Imports products from a CSV file.

Usage: 1. Click `File` → `Import` → `Import Products (CSV)...` 2. Select the CSV file 3. Review the mapping and preview 4. Start the import

[?] **Continue reading:** Details on CSV import/export are described in Chapter 7 (Products).

Export Data (Z3)...

Exports tax-relevant data (Z3/GDPdU) for audits.

Prerequisites: - The **Archive Root** is configured in settings

Usage: 1. Click `File` → `Export` → `Export Data (Z3)...` 2. Select tenant and time period/fiscal year (depending on the dialog) 3. Start export 4. After completion, the storage location is shown

[?] **Continue reading:** Details on Z3 export are described in Chapter 10 (GoBD Compliance).

Export DATEV (Buchungsstapel)...

Creates a DATEV booking batch (EXTF) for accounting/tax advisory.

Function: - Exports relevant outgoing documents to the DATEV EXTF format - Creates a ZIP file containing the export CSV (EXTF_Buchungsstapel.csv) - Stores the export in the GoBD archive (including integrity metadata)

Prerequisites: - The **Archive Root** is configured in settings - The **DATEV Client number** is set in settings (required)

Important note about the period: - An export must **not** span across two fiscal years. Choose a period within one fiscal year.

Usage: 1. Click File → Export → Export DATEV (Buchungsstapel) . . .
2. Select tenant and period 3. Check DATEV settings (advisor number, client number, revenue account) 4. Start export 5. After completion you can open the export folder in your file manager

[?] **Continue reading:** DATEV settings are described in Chapter 9 (Settings).

Archive Browser

Opens the audit log view filtered to archive exports.

Function: - Navigates to the audit log view - Automatically applies a filter for **archive exports** (e.g., audit log exports, Z3 exports, DATEV exports) - Useful for quickly looking up export events (and their timestamps)

Usage: 1. Click File → Archive Browser 2. The application switches to the audit log view with a matching filter 3. Adjust filter/time range if needed

Exit

Closes the application.

Function: - Terminates the application cleanly - Saves all open changes - Automatically creates a backup (if configured) - Performs cleanup tasks

Usage: - Click File → Exit - Or close the window via the X symbol - Or use the keyboard shortcut (if configured)

When quitting: 1. **Unsaved changes:** Dialog asks if you want to save 2. **Automatic backup:** If enabled in settings, a backup is created 3. **Save window position:** Size and position are saved for the next start 4. **Sidebar status:** Collapsed/expanded is saved

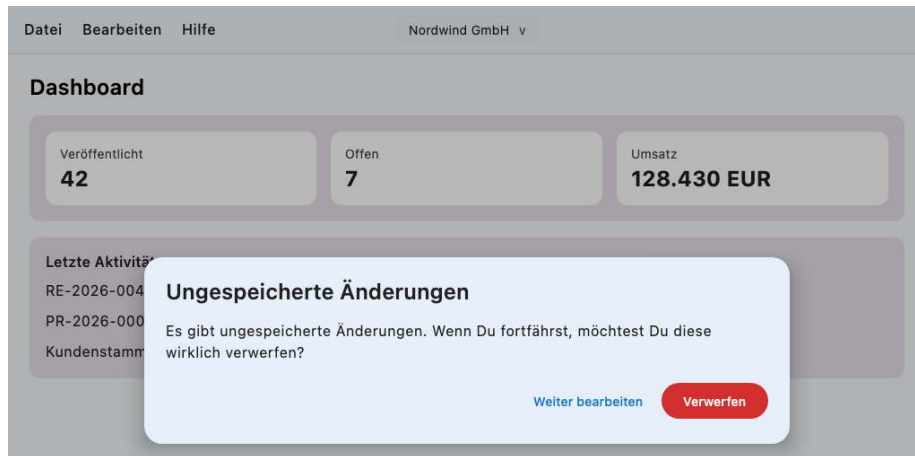


Figure 16: Dialog for unsaved changes before quitting

[!] **Important:** Always close the application via **File** → **Exit** and not by terminating the process. Only this way will all data be saved correctly and backups created.

[*] **Best Practice:** Configure automatic backups when quitting in the settings. This way you always have a current backup, even if you forget.

1.2 Edit Menu

The Edit menu provides access to the settings and demo/sandbox functions.



Figure 17: The Edit menu with settings and demo/sandbox actions

Preferences

Opens the application's settings area.

Function: - Navigates to the settings page - Equivalent to clicking Settings in the sidebar

Usage: - Click Edit → Preferences - The sidebar automatically switches to Settings - The main area shows the settings page

Settings Areas: - **Appearance:** Theme (light/dark), language - **Backup:** Configure automatic backups - **Documents:** Paths and naming patterns for PDF export - **Updates:** Automatic update check - **Email:** SMTP/IMAP configuration for sending emails - **Document Emails:** Templates for document email subject/body - **User Management:** Users, roles, and permissions (if enabled)

[i] **Tip:** Settings are also accessible via the sidebar. The menu entry is a shortcut for users who prefer the menu bar.

[?] **Continue reading:** All settings are described in detail in Chapter 9 (Settings).

Load Demo Data

Downloads a demo database and creates a **sandbox** so you can safely try the application.

Function: - Downloads a demo database from the internet - Creates a sandbox database (separate from your production data)

Usage: 1. Click Edit → Load Demo Data 2. Confirm the dialog (internet connection required) 3. After download you can switch to the sandbox

Switch to Sandbox

Switches to the sandbox database (test environment).

Function: - Activates sandbox mode - All changes affect only the sandbox database

Usage: - Click Edit → Switch to Sandbox

Visibility: - Only available if a sandbox exists and you are currently in production

Corrupted Sandbox Database

If the sandbox database is corrupted or empty, the application shows an informational dialog.

Dialog title: Corrupted Sandbox Database

What you can do: - The application offers to remove the sandbox (button: Delete Corrupted Sandbox) - Your production data is not affected

Hint: - To create a new sandbox afterwards, use Edit → Load Demo Data.

Sandbox Database Removed

If a corrupted/empty sandbox was removed automatically, the application informs you about it.

Dialog title: Sandbox Database Removed

Important: - You are using the production database again - Your production data is not affected

Switch to Production

Switches back to the production database.

Function: - Deactivates sandbox mode - You work with your real data again

Usage: - Click Edit → Switch to Production

Visibility: - Only available if you are currently in the sandbox

Delete Demo Data

Deletes the sandbox database (demo data).

Function: - Permanently removes demo/sandbox data - Production data is not affected - Switches back to the production database (if you are currently in the sandbox) - Only visible if a sandbox exists

Usage: 1. Click Edit → Delete Demo Data 2. **Warning:** Dialog asks for confirmation 3. Confirm with Delete 4. The demo data is removed 5. You start with an empty database

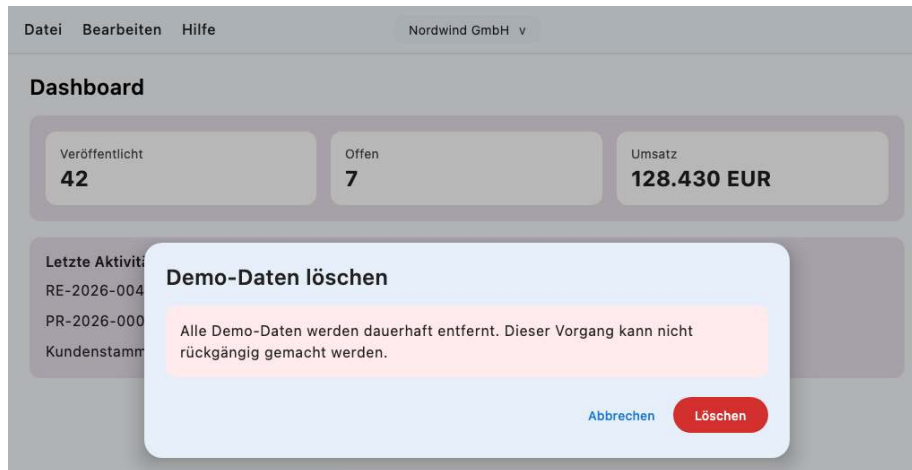


Figure 23: Warning dialog before deleting demo data

[!] **Important:** This action cannot be undone. If you've already entered your own data, it will also be deleted. Create a backup first!

[!] **Important:** This action cannot be undone. It affects the sandbox/demo data. Create an additional backup of your production data if needed.

[*] **Best Practice:** Use demo data to test the application. When you're ready to work productively, delete the demo data and start with your own data.

1.3 Help Menu

The Help menu provides access to documentation, support functions, and system information.

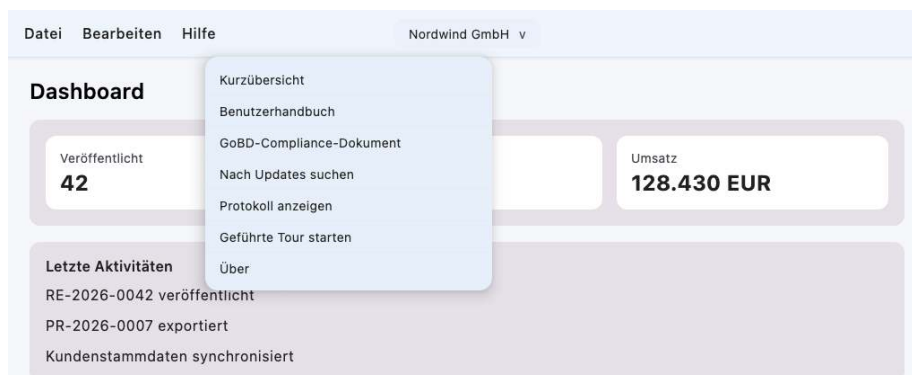


Figure 18: The opened Help menu with documentation and support options

Quick Reference

Opens the quick reference in your browser.

Usage: - Click Help → Quick Reference

Manual

Opens the full user manual in your browser.

Usage: - Click Help → Manual

Download Compliance Agreement

Downloads the procedural documentation (Verfahrensdokumentation) as a PDF.

Usage: - Click Help → Download Compliance Agreement

Check for Updates

Manually checks if a new version is available.

Function: - Contacts the update server - Compares the installed version with the available version - Shows a result (update available or not)

Usage: 1. Click Help → Check for Updates 2. Wait while the check runs 3. **No update available:** Dialog informs you that you're using the latest version 4. **Update available:** Dialog shows the new version and changes 5. Click Download to go to the download page

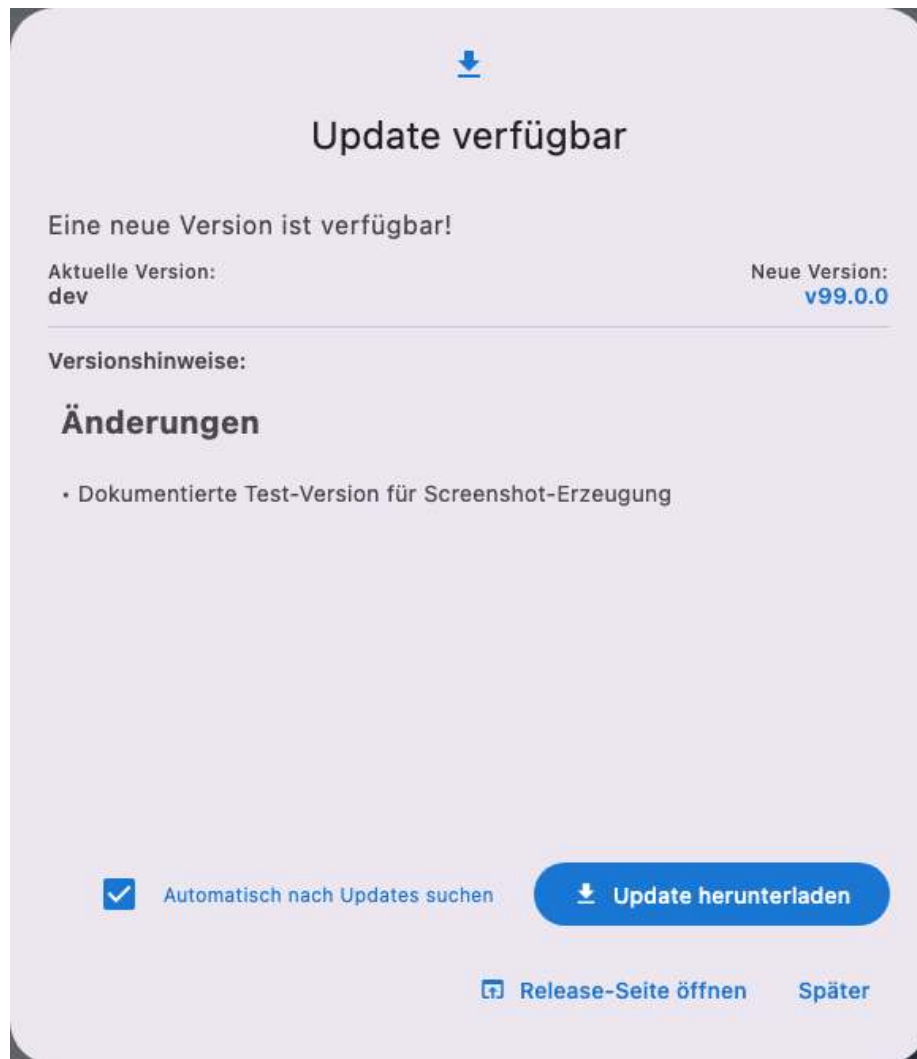


Figure 19: Dialog with information about an available update

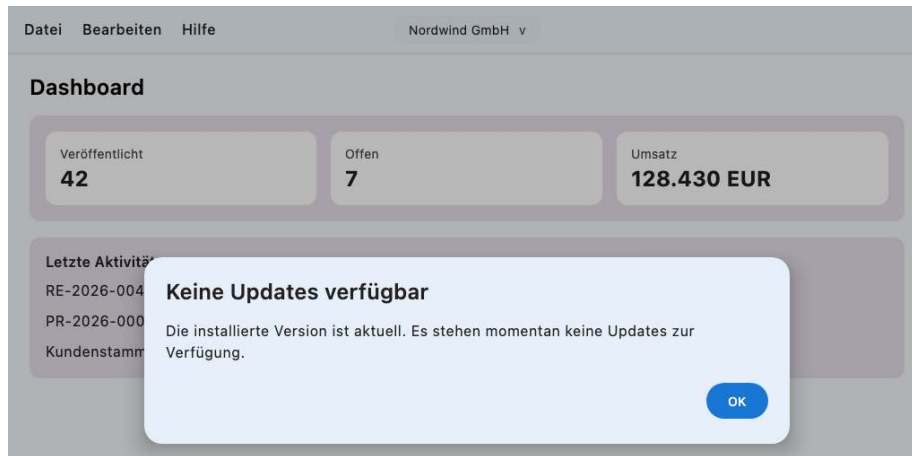


Figure 20: Dialog confirming that the installed version is current

Automatic Updates: - In the settings, you can enable automatic update checking on startup - The application then checks for new versions on every start - You receive a notification when an update is available

[*] **Best Practice:** Enable automatic update checking in the settings. This way you won't miss important security updates or new features.

Open Database Folder

Opens the folder where the database is stored.

Function: - Opens the database folder in your system's file manager - Shows the `invoicer_db.db` file - Useful for manual backup or migration

Usage: - Click Help → Open Database Folder - Your file manager opens the folder (Finder on macOS, Explorer on Windows, Nautilus/Dolphin on Linux)

Database Locations: - **Windows:** `%LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\` - **macOS:** `~/Library/Application Support/agynamix-invoicer/` - **Linux:** `$XDG_DATA_HOME/agynamix-invoicer/` (typically `~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/`)

What you'll find in the folder: - `invoicer_db.db` - The SQLite database with all data - `invoicer_db.db-wal` - Write-Ahead-Log (temporary file during operation) - `invoicer_db.db-shm` - Shared Memory (temporary file during operation)

[!] **Important:** Don't manually modify or delete the database files while the application is running. This can lead to data loss

or corruption.

[i] Tip: For a manual backup, copy the `invoicer_db.db` to a safe location while the application is closed. However, preferably use the integrated backup function.

Show Log

Displays the application log.

Function: - Opens the internal log window - Shows all application events, warnings, and errors - Useful for troubleshooting and support requests

Usage: - Click **Help** → **Show Log** - The log window opens in the main area of the application - Scroll through the entries or use the search function

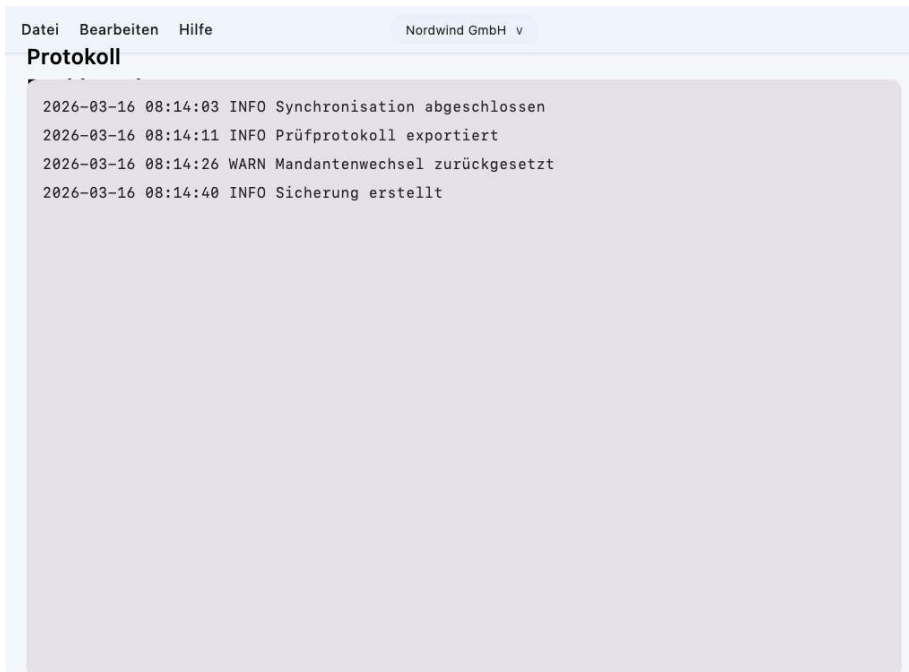


Figure 21: The log view with filtered log entries

Understanding log entries: - **INFO:** Normal information (e.g., “Invoice created”) - **WARN:** Warnings (e.g., “Backup folder not configured”) - **ERROR:** Errors (e.g., “File could not be saved”) - Each entry contains timestamp, level, and message

Filter log: - By level (INFO, WARN, ERROR) - By time period - By search term

Export log: - Click Export to save the log as a text file - Useful for support requests

[i] **Tip:** In case of technical problems, check the log first. Often you'll find clues to the cause there (e.g., missing write permissions, full disk).

[*] **Best Practice:** For support requests, export the log and attach it to your email. This helps the support team solve your problem faster.

Start Guided Tour

Starts an interactive tour through the application.

Function: - Shows a step-by-step introduction - Highlights relevant UI elements - Explains the most important functions - Ideal for new users

Usage: 1. Click Help → Start Guided Tour 2. The tour begins and guides you through the application 3. Follow the instructions and click Next 4. You can exit the tour at any time with Cancel

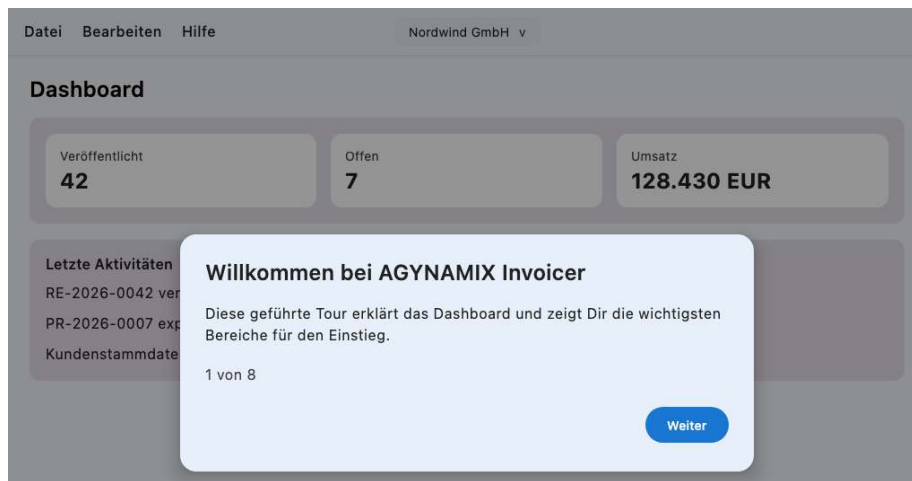


Figure 22: The guided tour explains the dashboard and highlights relevant areas

Tour contents: - Dashboard and metrics - Sidebar navigation - Creating tenants and customers - Creating documents - Using text snippets - Recording time sheets

[i] **Tip:** You can start the tour multiple times – ideal for training colleagues or employees.

License...

Opens the license dialog.

Visibility: - This menu item is not available in **prerelease** builds.

License Prefs Debug...

Opens a debug dialog for license preferences (development/support).

Visibility: - This menu item is only visible in **dev mode** builds.

About

Shows information about the application.

Function: - Display of version number - Copyright information - License information - List of used open-source libraries

Usage: - Click Help → About - The About dialog opens

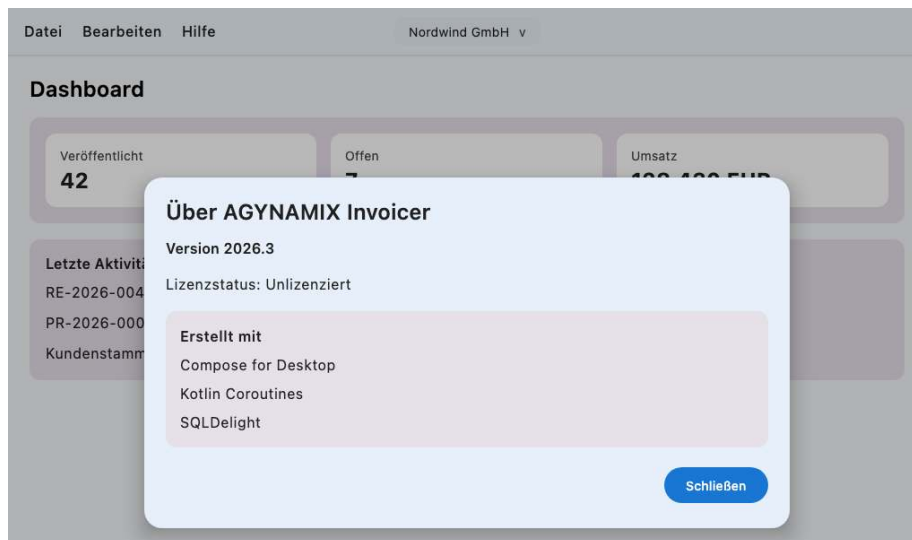


Figure 24: The About dialog with version information and credits

Information in the dialog: - **AGYNAMIX Invoicer** - Name and logo - **Version:** e.g., 1.0.0 - **Copyright:** © 2025 AGYNAMIX - **License:** License type and conditions - **Libraries:** List of used open-source components with licenses

Used libraries (selection): - Kotlin & Compose Multiplatform - SQLDelight - Apache PDFBox - Mustangproject (ZUGFeRD) - Others (see complete list in the dialog)

[i] Tip: The version number is important for support requests. Always provide the version when you need help.

1.4 Tenant Selection

In the center of the menu bar is the tenant selection – a central element for quick switching between different companies.

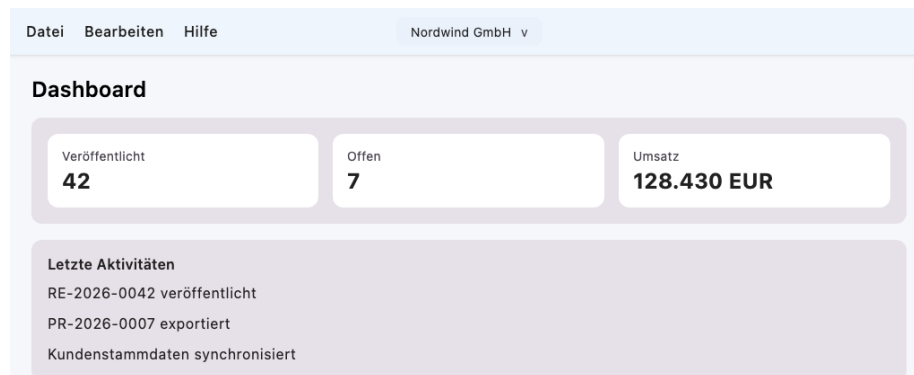


Figure 25: The tenant selection in the center of the menu bar with multiple tenants

Function

Purpose: - Quick switch between tenants (companies) - Shows the currently selected tenant - Default tenant is marked with star symbol ([*])

Effect of selection: - Filters all lists by the selected tenant: - Dashboard metrics - Document list - Customer list - Time sheets - New documents are automatically assigned to the selected tenant - Invoice and quote numbers use the tenant's numbering scheme

Usage

Switch tenants: 1. Click on the tenant selection (dropdown) 2. The list of all tenants opens 3. Click on the desired tenant 4. The application immediately switches to the selected tenant 5. All views update automatically

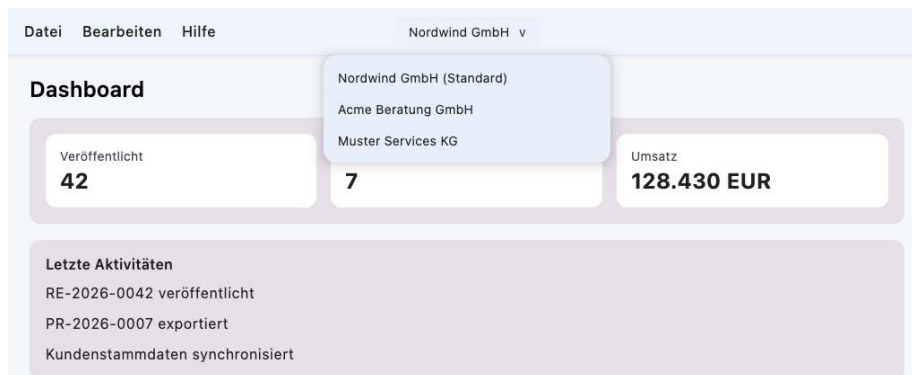


Figure 26: Opened tenant dropdown with default tenant marking

Default tenant: - Marked with a star symbol ([*]) - Automatically preselected when starting the application - You can change the default tenant in tenant management

If only one tenant exists: - The selection shows only this one tenant - A dropdown is still present for future tenants

If no tenants exist: - The selection shows “Please create tenant” - You must first create a tenant (see quick start)

Multi-Company Management

The tenant selection enables managing multiple companies in one database – ideal for:

Use Cases: - **Multiple sole proprietorships:** You operate multiple self-employed activities - **Different legal forms:** GmbH and sole proprietorship in parallel - **Clients for accounting:** As an accountant, you manage multiple corporate clients - **Different brands:** You invoice under different company names

Advantages: - Separate numbering schemes per tenant - Individual company data and logos - Separate bank details - Clear separation of documents - Easy switching between tenants

[~] **Workflow Tip:** Create a separate tenant for each legally independent company. This keeps invoices cleanly separated and you avoid confusion.

[i] **Tip:** The default tenant is preselected on startup. Set the tenant you work with most frequently as default.

[?] **Continue reading:** More on tenant management can be found in Chapter 5 (Tenants).

Summary

The menu bar provides access to important high-level functions:

File Menu: - [+] Create and restore backups - [+] GoBD-compliant exports (Audit Log, Z3, DATEV) - [+] Archive verification and archive browser - [+] Exit application

Edit Menu: - [+] Quick access to settings

Help Menu: - [+] Quick reference/manual and support - [+] Check for updates - [+] Show log - [+] Guided tour - [+] System information

Tenant Selection: - [+] Quick switching between companies - [+] Automatic filtering of all lists - [+] Multi-company management in one database

[*] **Best Practice:** Use the menu bar for administrative tasks (backups, exports, settings) and the sidebar for daily work with documents and customers.

Next Steps: In the next chapter, you'll learn all about the dashboard – the central overview of your business activities.

2. Dashboard

The dashboard is the control center of AGYNAMIX Invoicer. It provides you with a complete overview of your business activities at a glance – from open invoices to revenue trends to overdue payments.

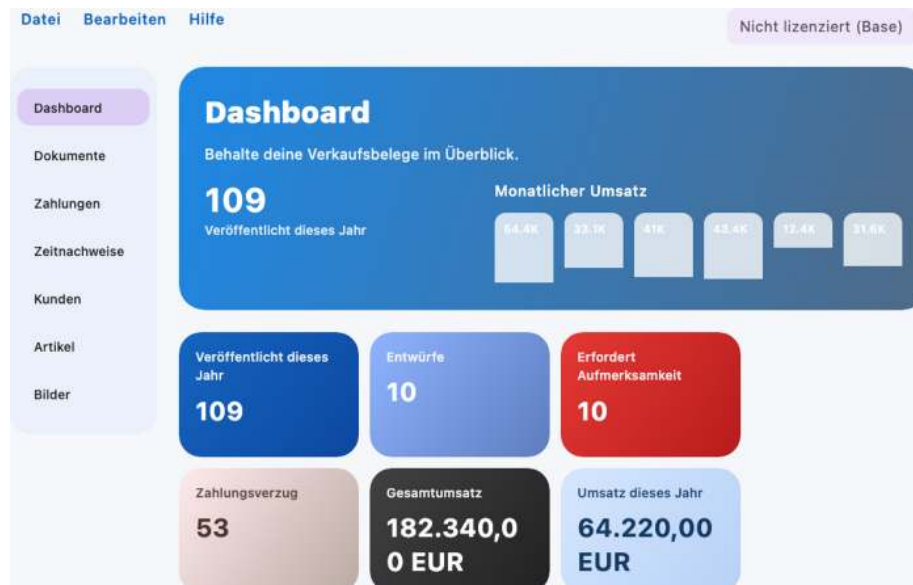


Figure 27: The complete dashboard with hero area and all statistics cards

2.1 Dashboard Structure

The dashboard consists of two main areas:

Hero Area (Header Section)

The upper area shows the most important metrics at a glance:

Published This Year: - Large number shows the total count of published documents in the current year - Includes all document types (quotes, invoices, correction invoices) - Only published documents are counted (no drafts)

Monthly Revenue (Chart): - Bar chart shows revenue development over the last 12 months - Hover over a bar to see exact values - Shows paid invoices (not open receivables) - For multiple currencies: Separate display per currency

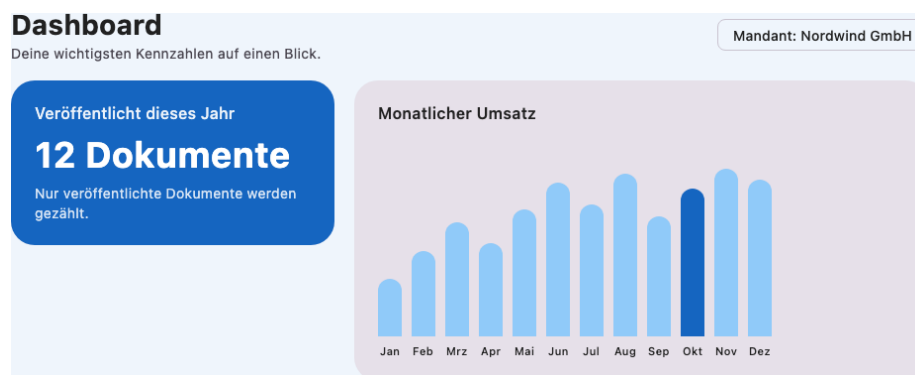


Figure 28: The hero area with total documents and revenue trend chart

Metric Cards

Below are colored cards with detailed statistics. Each card is **clickable** and opens the filtered document list.

2.2 Metrics in Detail

Published This Year

What is counted: - All documents published in the current calendar year - Includes: Quotes, invoices, correction invoices, payment reminders - Only status Published and higher (no drafts)

Click action: - Opens document list filtered by “Published this year” - Shows all documents of the current year

Color: Primary blue

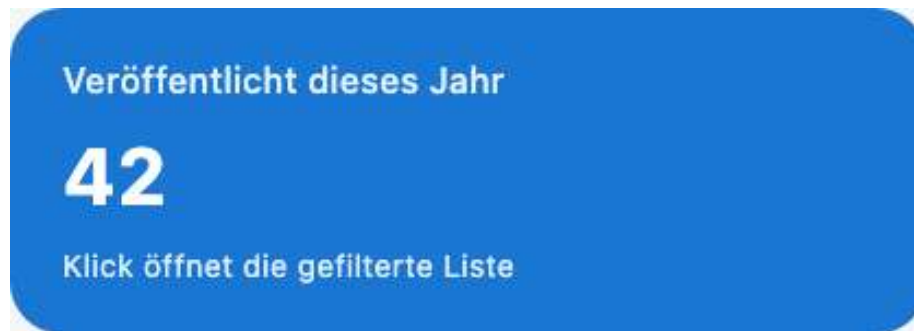


Figure 29: The metric card “Published This Year”

[i] **Tip:** This number gives you a quick overview of your business activity. A decline compared to previous months may indicate declining order activity.

Drafts

What is counted: - All documents with status Draft - Across all document types - Unfiltered by tenant (if a tenant is selected, only its drafts)

Click action: - Opens document list filtered by status “Draft” - Shows all non-finalized documents

Color: Tertiary (Light blue/gray)



Figure 30: Metric card with the number of open drafts

Why important: - Drafts are not yet finalized - They don't have a final number yet - They can still be edited or deleted - Too many drafts indicate unfinished tasks

[~] **Workflow Tip:** Regularly review your drafts and finalize or delete them. This keeps you organized and avoids outdated documents.

Requires Attention

What is counted: - Documents that require your attention: - Open quotes (published but not yet accepted/rejected) - Expired quotes (validity date exceeded) - Unpublished documents (drafts that should be finalized) - Partially paid invoices (remaining payment outstanding)

Click action: - Opens document list filtered by “Requires attention” - Shows all documents that need action

Color: Error red



Figure 31: Metric card for documents requiring action

Typical actions: - **Open quotes:** Mark as accepted/rejected or create invoice - **Expired quotes:** Follow up with customer or mark as rejected - **Drafts:** Finalize and publish - **Partial payments:** Record remaining payment or create reminder

[*] **Best Practice:** Check this card daily. It shows you at a glance where action is needed.

Payment Overdue

What is counted: - Invoices and correction invoices that are overdue - Status: Published or Partially paid - Due date (Payment by) is in the past - Remaining balance > 0

Click action: - Opens document list filtered by “Overdue” - Shows only overdue invoices

Color: Error container (Light red)

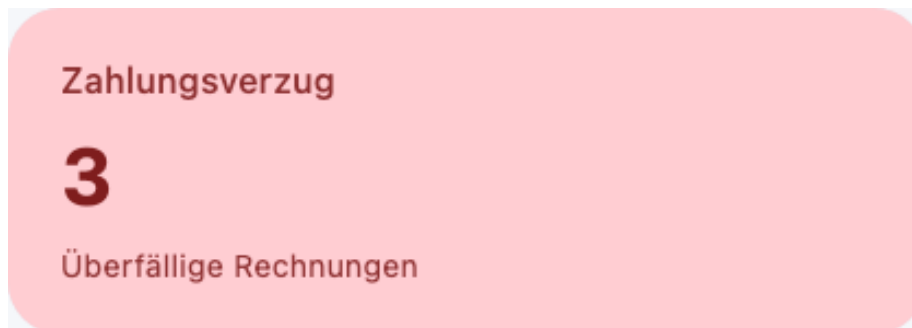


Figure 32: Metric card with number of overdue invoices

Why important: - Overdue invoices endanger your cash flow - You should act promptly (reminder, payment notice) - The longer invoices remain open, the more difficult collection becomes

Typical actions: - Send payment reminder via email - Create reminder (1st reminder → 2nd reminder → 3rd reminder) - Follow up by phone - Commission collection agency (for repeated payment delays)

[!] **Important:** Overdue invoices should never be ignored. The earlier you respond, the higher the success rate for collection.

[~] **Workflow Tip:** Automatically create reminders for overdue invoices. The application helps you stay on top of things.

Total Revenue

What is counted: - Sum of all **paid** amounts from invoices and correction invoices - Across all years (total revenue since inception) - Status: Partially paid, Fully paid, Published (only paid amounts) - Grouped by currency

Display: - Primary currency (largest sum) displayed large - Additional currencies as small chips below

Click action: - Opens document list filtered by “Total revenue” - Shows all invoices and correction invoices

Color: Secondary (Darker blue/gray)



Figure 33: Metric card with total revenue, primary currency large, others as chips

Interpretation: - Shows **realized** revenue (only actually received payments) - Open receivables are NOT counted - Provides information about total company income - Important for accountant and year-end closing

[i] **Tip:** Total revenue is particularly interesting at year-end. It shows you how much revenue you actually generated (not just invoiced).

Revenue This Year

What is counted: - Sum of all **paid** amounts from invoices and correction invoices - Only for the current calendar year - Status: Partially paid, Fully paid, Published (only paid amounts) - Grouped by currency

Display: - Primary currency (largest sum) displayed large - Additional currencies as small chips below

Click action: - Opens document list filtered by "Revenue this year" - Shows all invoices and correction invoices of the current year

Color: Primary container (Light blue)



Figure 34: Metric card with revenue for the current year

Interpretation: - Provides information about annual performance - Comparable with previous years - Important for VAT advance return - Shows whether annual revenue targets are being met

Comparison with total revenue: - **Total revenue:** All years since inception - **Revenue this year:** Only current calendar year

[*] **Best Practice:** Set annual revenue targets and regularly compare them with this metric. This shows you if you're on track.

[i] **Tip:** Use the revenue chart in the hero area to analyze monthly development. This helps you recognize seasonal fluctuations and plan accordingly.

Outstanding Amounts

What is counted: - Sum of all **outstanding** receivables from invoices and correction invoices - Status: Published (completely unpaid) or Partially paid (remaining amount) - Calculation: Total amount minus already received payments - Grouped by currency

Display: - Primary currency (largest sum) displayed large - Additional currencies as small chips below

Click action: - Opens document list filtered by "Outstanding amounts" - Shows all invoices with remaining balance

Color: Inverse primary (Contrast color)

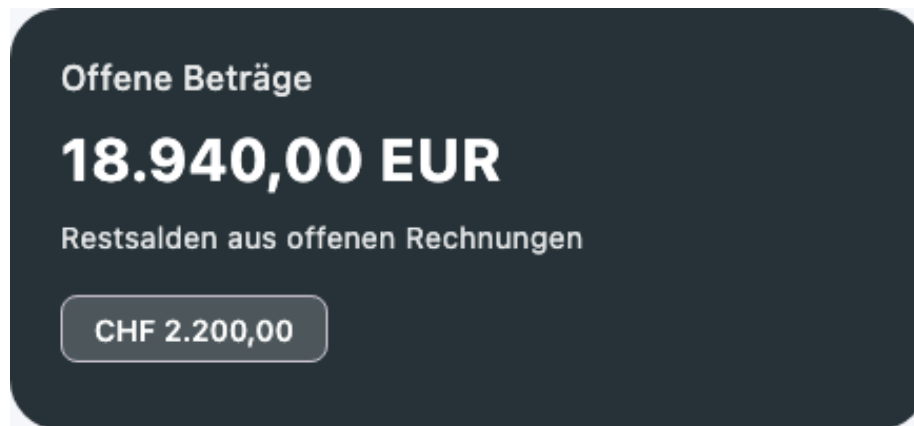


Figure 35: Metric card with the sum of all outstanding receivables

Interpretation: - Shows how much money you're still owed - Important for liquidity planning - High outstanding amounts = liquidity risk - Low outstanding amounts = Good customer payment behavior

Typical actions: - Check and record payment receipts - Send payment reminders - Create reminders (when overdue) - Arrange payment plans with customers

[!] **Important:** Outstanding amounts are not “revenue,” but pending receivables. They only become revenue after payment is received.

[~] **Workflow Tip:** Regularly check outstanding amounts and reconcile them with your bank statements. Record payment receipts promptly to maintain a realistic overview.

2.3 Navigation via Metrics

All metric cards are **clickable** – a click opens the document list with the appropriate filter.

How it works:

1. **Click on metric card**
 - Click dashboard card (e.g., “Payment overdue”)
2. **Document list opens**
 - The sidebar automatically switches to “Documents”
 - The document list is already filtered
3. **Filter is preset**
 - Appropriate filters are active

- You only see relevant documents
4. **Adjust or reset filter**
- You can further adjust the filter
 - Or reset all filters with “Clear filters”

Dokumentenliste		Filter: Zahlungsverzug
Gefiltert nach Kennzahlen aus dem Dashboard		
RE-2026-0042 Meyer Metallbau		Fällig seit 14 Tagen 2.840,00 EUR
RE-2026-0038 Nordstern Design		Fällig seit 7 Tagen 1.490,00 EUR
RE-2026-0031 Sonnensegel GmbH		Teilweise bezahlt 860,00 EUR

Figure 36: The filtered document list after clicking the “Payment overdue” card

Examples:

Payment overdue: - Filter: Document types = Invoice, Correction invoice - Filter: Status = Published, Partially paid - Filter: Due payments = Active - Result: Only overdue invoices

Drafts: - Filter: Status = Draft - Result: All documents in draft status

Revenue this year: - Filter: Document types = Invoice, Correction invoice - Filter: Status = Partially paid, Fully paid, Published - Filter: Year = Current year - Result: All invoices of the current year

[i] **Tip:** Navigation via dashboard cards is often faster than manual filtering in the document list. Use it to jump directly to relevant documents.

2.4 Welcome Area (on First Start)

When you start the application for the first time or haven’t entered any data yet, the dashboard shows a **welcome area** instead of metrics.

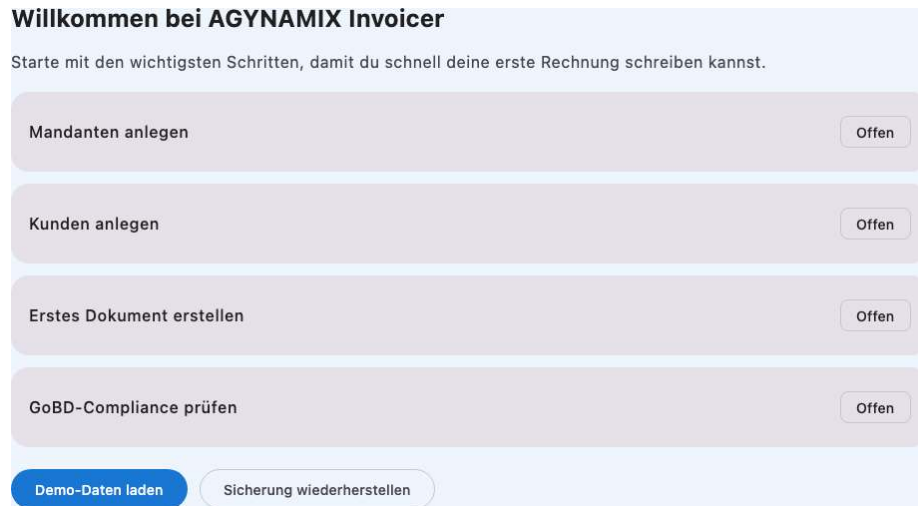


Figure 37: The welcome area with step-by-step instructions for getting started

Welcome Actions:

Load Demo Data: - Fills the database with realistic sample data - Ideal for exploring the application - Includes: 2 tenants, 100 customers, approx. 300 documents, time sheets - Can be deleted later

Restore from Backup: - Restore existing data from a backup - Useful when switching to a new computer - Overwrites the current (empty) database

Create First Tenant: - Click opens the tenant creation form - Required step before you can create invoices

Create Customer: - Click opens the customer creation form - Required for invoice and quote addressing

Create First Document: - Click opens the document creation form - Starts your workflow

Progress: - The welcome steps are checked off one by one - Once tenant, customer, and document exist, the welcome area disappears - The dashboard then shows the metrics

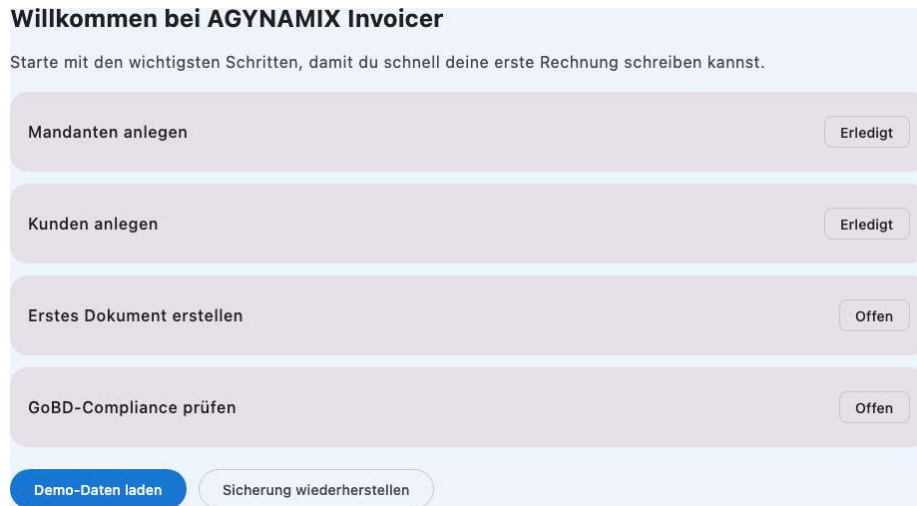


Figure 38: Welcome area shows progress – tenant and customer already created

[*] **Best Practice:** Follow the steps in the welcome area one by one. This ensures that all required master data is present.

[i] **Tip:** If you want to test the application first, load the demo database. You can remove it anytime via Edit → Delete Demo Data.

2.5 Empty Dashboard

If you’ve created tenants and customers but haven’t created any documents yet, the dashboard shows an **empty state**.



Figure 39: The dashboard in empty state – tenants and customers exist, but no documents yet

Display: - Symbol (Insights icon) - Title: “Your workspace is ready” - Text: “Once you create sales documents, you’ll see live insights here.”

What to do: - Navigate to Documents and create your first invoice or quote
- Or use time tracking to record time sheets and bill them

[i] **Tip:** The empty state shows you that basic configuration (tenant, customer) is complete. Now you can start productive work.

2.6 Multiple Currencies

If you bill customers in different currencies, the dashboard displays **multiple currencies** simultaneously.

Display:

Primary Currency: - Currency with the highest sum is displayed large - Default position in metric card text

Additional Currencies: - As small, colored chips below the main number - Example: USD 5,432.10, GBP 2,100.00 - Sorted by amount (descending)



Figure 40: Metric card shows EUR as primary currency and USD/GBP as chips

Currency Handling:

No Automatic Conversion: - The application does NOT automatically convert - Each currency is summed and displayed separately - You see amounts in original currencies

Why no conversion: - Exchange rates change daily - Conversions would be incorrect at time of payment - You have control over currency exchange - Accounting correct

Recommendation: - Bill primarily in one main currency (e.g., EUR) - Use foreign currencies only when the customer requires it - Consider exchange rate risks in your pricing

[*] **Best Practice:** If you regularly bill in foreign currencies, manually add currencies with current exchange rates for internal evaluations. The dashboard shows you original amounts.

2.7 Monthly Revenue Chart

In the hero area of the dashboard is a **bar chart** showing revenue development over the last 12 months.

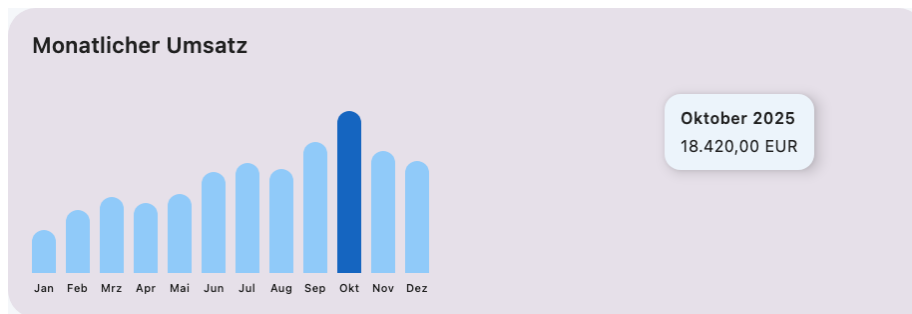


Figure 41: Monthly revenue chart with tooltip on mouse-over

What is displayed:

Bar per Month: - Each bar represents a month - Height = Revenue of this month (paid invoices) - Color: Gradient from primary color to background

Time Period: - Last 12 months - Rolling (current month + 11 previous months) - Month names below bars

Tooltip: - Hover over a bar with the mouse - Tooltip shows: Month, revenue, currency - Example: "Revenue in November: 12,345.67 EUR"

Interpretation:

Recognize Trends: - Rising trend = Growth - Falling trend = Decline - Fluctuations = Seasonality

Seasonal Patterns: - Some industries have seasonal fluctuations - Example: Summer vacation = fewer orders - Plan with these patterns (liquidity, vacation)

Year-to-Year Comparison: - Compare current month with previous year's month - Recognize long-term developments - Determine growth or decline

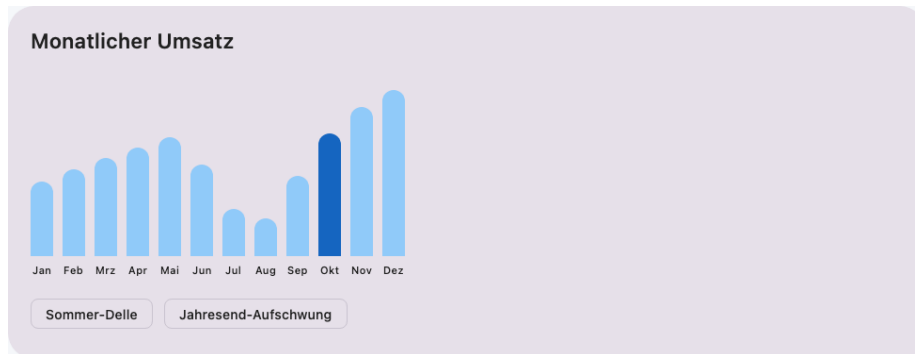


Figure 42: Revenue chart shows typical summer dip and year-end upswing

[i] Tip: Use the revenue chart to recognize trends early. A decline over several months should be reason to intensify your acquisition.

[~] Workflow Tip: Screenshot the revenue chart at year-end. This gives you visual documentation of your business development for accountant or business plan.

2.8 Dashboard and Tenant Selection

The dashboard responds to tenant selection in the menu bar.

Behavior:

Switch Tenant: - Select another tenant in the menu bar - The dashboard reloads - All metrics are filtered by the selected tenant

Only Selected Tenant: - Metrics show ONLY data from the selected tenant - Documents, customers, revenues of the selected tenant - Other tenants are not considered

Default Tenant: - The default tenant is preselected on startup - You can set the default tenant in tenant management

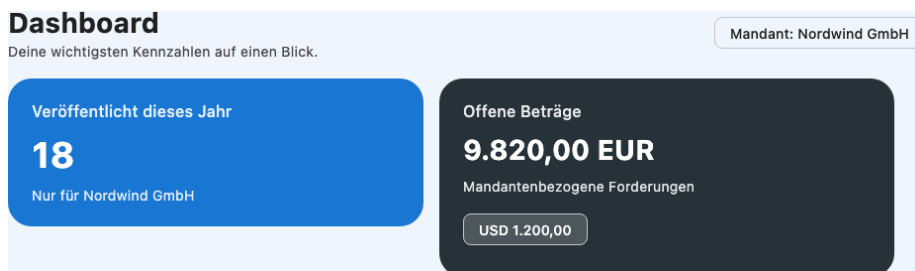


Figure 43: The dashboard shows metrics for the currently selected tenant

Multi-Company Management: - If you manage multiple tenants, switch regularly - Check metrics of each tenant - Keep track of all your companies

[*] **Best Practice:** If you have multiple tenants, schedule fixed times for each tenant (e.g., Mondays Company A, Tuesdays Company B). This avoids confusion.

2.9 Dashboard Refresh

The dashboard updates **automatically** in the following cases:

Automatic Refresh:

1. **On Application Start**
 - Dashboard loads metrics when opening
2. **On Tenant Switch**
 - New metrics are loaded
3. **After Creating a Document**
 - Dashboard updates as soon as you navigate back
 - New documents are included in metrics
4. **After Recording Payment**
 - Revenue and outstanding amounts update
5. **After Deleting a Document**
 - Metrics are recalculated

Manual Refresh:

Not Required: - The application keeps the dashboard automatically up-to-date - There is no manual “Refresh” button - All changes are immediately reflected

In Case of Problems: - If metrics don’t appear current, navigate to another area and back - In rare case of errors: Restart application

[i] **Tip:** The dashboard is always current. You don’t need to worry about refreshes.

2.10 Typical Dashboard Workflows

Morning Routine: Get Overview

1. **Start Application**
 - Dashboard opens automatically
2. **Check Metrics**

- Check “Payment overdue” → Send reminders
 - Check “Requires attention” → Follow up on open quotes
 - Review “Drafts” → Finalize or delete
3. **Perform Actions**
 - Click on cards to see details
 - Edit documents, record payments
 4. **Analyze Revenue Chart**
 - Recognize trends
 - Plan for coming months

[T] **Time Required:** 5-10 minutes daily

Weekly Financial Review

1. **Check Revenue**
 - Compare “Revenue this year” with targets
 - Monitor “Outstanding amounts”
2. **Control Payment Receipts**
 - Reconcile bank statements with open invoices
 - Record payments in application
3. **Dunning Management**
 - Check “Payment overdue”
 - Send payment reminders
 - Create reminders
4. **Quote Management**
 - Review “Requires attention”
 - Follow up on open quotes
 - Mark quotes as accepted/rejected

[T] **Time Required:** 15-30 minutes weekly

Month-End Closing

1. **Record All Payment Receipts**
 - Completely reconcile bank statements
 - Post payments to invoices
2. **Document Metrics**
 - Screenshot of dashboard
 - Revenue chart for archive
3. **Clarify Open Items**
 - Analyze “Outstanding amounts”
 - Create collection plan
4. **Prepare VAT Advance Return**
 - Export “Revenue this year”

- Filter document list by month
- Export all PDFs and audit log

[T] **Time Required:** 30-60 minutes monthly

Summary

The dashboard is your central hub for all important business metrics:

Metrics at a Glance: - [+] Published this year - [+] Drafts - [+] Requires attention - [+] Payment overdue - [+] Total revenue - [+] Revenue this year - [+] Outstanding amounts

Features: - [+] Clickable cards with automatic filtering - [+] Monthly revenue chart - [+] Multi-currency support - [+] Automatic refresh - [+] Tenant filtering

Benefits: - [+] Quick overview of business activities - [+] Early detection of problems - [+] Efficient navigation to relevant documents - [+] Data-driven decisions

[*] **Best Practice:** Start each workday with a look at the dashboard. This keeps you informed and ensures you don't miss important tasks.

Next Steps: In the next chapter, you'll learn all about document management – the heart of AGYNAMIX Invoicer.

3. Sales Documents (Documents)

The **Documents** section is the heart of AGYNAMIX Invoicer. Here you manage all your sales documents: quotes, invoices, correction invoices, and payment reminders. The application guides you through the complete life-cycle – from draft through publication to payment and archiving.

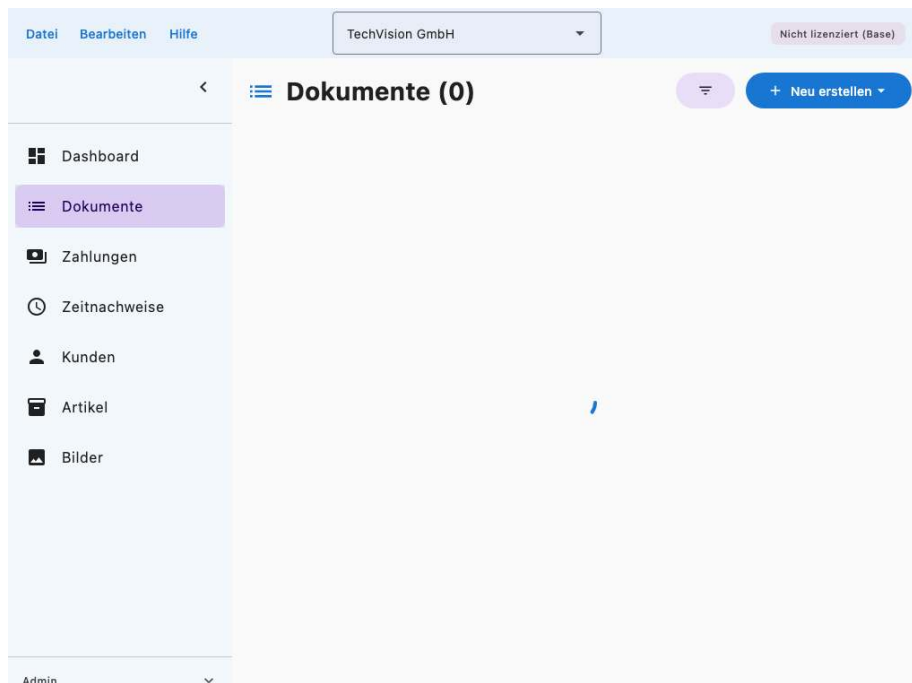


Figure 44: The document list shows all sales documents with filter options and status indicators

3.1 Document List and Navigation

The document list is your central workspace for all sales documents.

List Overview

The list shows you for each document:

- **Document number:** Unique number like RE-2024-001 (invoice) or ANG-2024-005 (quote)
- **Document type:** Visual symbol for quote, invoice, correction, or reminder
- **Status:** Color-coded status (e.g., “Draft”, “Published”, “Paid”)
- **Customer:** Customer name
- **Date:** Creation or invoice date
- **Amount:** Invoice total in document currency
- **Due date:** When payment is due (for invoices) or when a quote expires

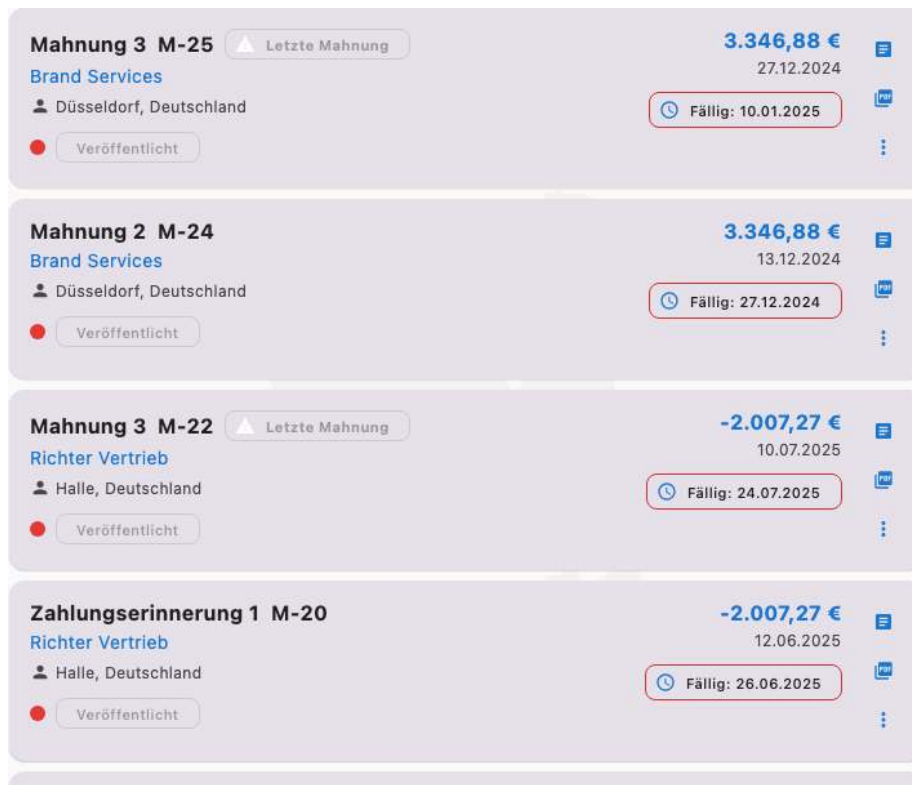


Figure 45: Each entry shows all important information at a glance

Header

In the header you see:

- **Number of documents:** Total count and filtered count when filters are active (e.g., “Documents (12 of 45)”)
- **Search field:** Search documents by number, customer name, or description
- **Filter icon:** Shows a blue badge when filters are active
- **+ Create New:** Dropdown menu to create new quotes or invoices



Figure 46: The header with search field, filter indicator, and create button

[i] **Pro Tip:** The document list remembers your filter settings as long as the application is open. After a restart, the list starts without filters.

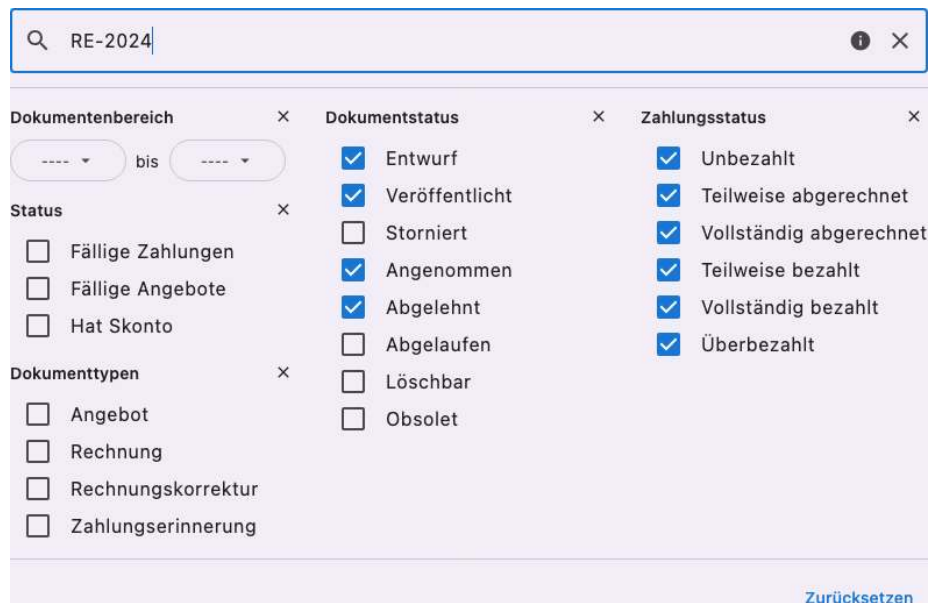
3.2 Filters and Search

With powerful filter and search functions, you can quickly find the desired documents.

Using the Search Field

The search field searches across **multiple fields simultaneously**: - Document numbers (e.g., RE-2024-001) - Customer names (company name, first name, last name) - Document descriptions and internal notes - **Line item descriptions** (text of individual services or products)

The search is real-time – as you type, the list updates immediately.



The screenshot shows a search interface. At the top, a search bar contains the text 'RE-2024'. Below the search bar is a filter panel with three main sections: 'Dokumentenbereich', 'Dokumentstatus', and 'Zahlungsstatus'. Each section has a dropdown menu and a list of checkboxes. The 'Dokumentstatus' section has checkboxes for 'Entwurf', 'Veröffentlicht', 'Storniert', 'Angenommen', 'Abgelehnt', 'Abgelaufen', 'Löschbar', and 'Obsolet'. The 'Zahlungsstatus' section has checkboxes for 'Unbezahlt', 'Teilweise abgerechnet', 'Vollständig abgerechnet', 'Teilweise bezahlt', 'Vollständig bezahlt', and 'Überbezahlt'. The 'Status' section has checkboxes for 'Fällige Zahlungen', 'Fällige Angebote', and 'Hat Skonto'. The 'Dokumenttypen' section has checkboxes for 'Angebot', 'Rechnung', 'Rechnungskorrektur', and 'Zahlungserinnerung'. A 'Zurücksetzen' button is located at the bottom right of the filter panel.

Figure 47: Real-time search finds documents by number, customer name, or line item content

Enhanced Multi-Field Search The search now finds documents even when the search term appears inside a **line item description**, not just in the customer name or document number. This makes it easy to answer questions like “Which invoices included ‘website maintenance’?”.

Examples:

What you type	What gets found
RE-2024-001	Document with that number

What you type	What gets found
Acme	All documents for customers containing “Acme”
website maintenance	All documents with a line item containing “website maintenance”
2024-003	Documents whose number contains that fragment

[i] Tip: Shorter, more specific search terms work best. Searching for maintenance will find everything containing that word; searching for 2025 website maintenance contract may not match if the words appear in different fields.

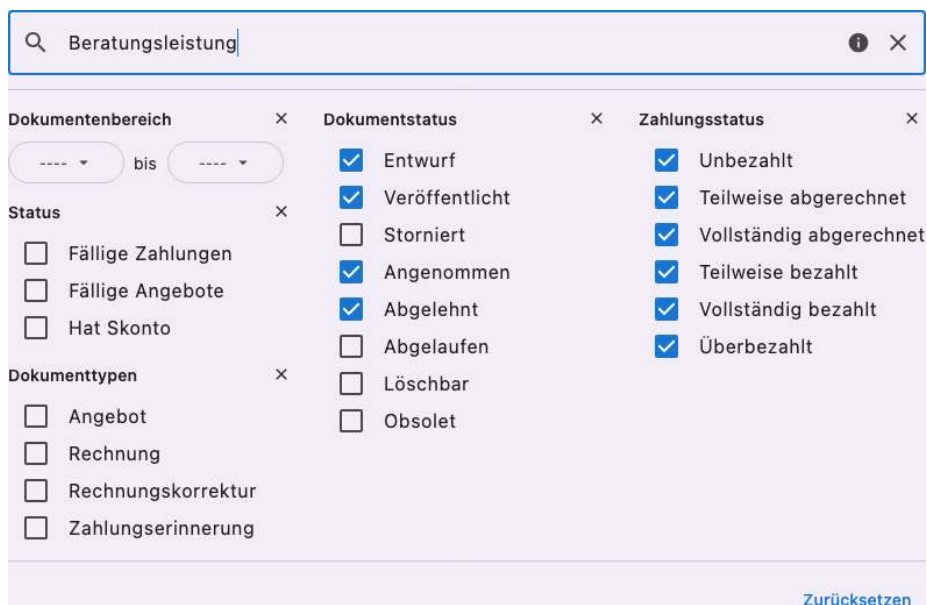


Figure XX: Searching for a service description finds matching documents instantly

Opening Filters

Click the **filter icon** (funnel icon) in the header. The filter panel opens on the right side.

Q Rechnungen durchsuchen i

Dokumentenbereich × <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; border-radius: 10px; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> ---- bis ---- </div>	Dokumentstatus × <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Entwurf <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Veröffentlicht <input type="checkbox"/> Storniert <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Angenommen <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Abgelehnt <input type="checkbox"/> Abgelaufen <input type="checkbox"/> Löschbar <input type="checkbox"/> Obsolet	Zahlungsstatus × <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Unbezahlt <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Teilweise abgerechnet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Vollständig abgerechnet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Teilweise bezahlt <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Vollständig bezahlt <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Überbezahlt
Status × <input type="checkbox"/> Fällige Zahlungen <input type="checkbox"/> Fällige Angebote <input type="checkbox"/> Hat Skonto		
Dokumenttypen × <input type="checkbox"/> Angebot <input type="checkbox"/> Rechnung <input type="checkbox"/> Rechnungskorrektur <input type="checkbox"/> Zahlungserinnerung		

[Zurücksetzen](#)

Figure 48: The filter panel offers numerous filter options

Available Filters

Document Types Select one or more document types:

- **Quote:** Non-binding offer to a customer
- **Invoice:** Payment request
- **Invoice Correction:** Cancellation or correction of an invoice
- **Payment Reminder:** Reminder for overdue invoices

🔍 Rechnungen durchsuchen ❗

Dokumentenbereich × <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> ---- bis ---- </div>	Dokumentstatus × <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Entwurf <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Veröffentlicht <input type="checkbox"/> Storniert <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Angenommen <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Abgelehnt <input type="checkbox"/> Abgelaufen <input type="checkbox"/> Löschbar <input type="checkbox"/> Obsolet 	Zahlungsstatus × <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Unbezahlt <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Teilweise abgerechnet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Vollständig abgerechnet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Teilweise bezahlt <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Vollständig bezahlt <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Überbezahlt
Status × <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Fällige Zahlungen <input type="checkbox"/> Fällige Angebote <input type="checkbox"/> Hat Skonto 	Dokumenttypen × <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Angebot <li style="background-color: #f0f0f0;"><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Rechnung <input type="checkbox"/> Rechnungskorrektur <input type="checkbox"/> Zahlungserinnerung 	

[Zurücksetzen](#)

Figure 49: Filter by one or more document types

[i] **Pro Tip:** Filters are additive – if you select “Quote” and “Invoice”, both types are displayed.

Document Status Filter by current status:

- **Draft:** Document is still being edited
- **Published:** Document has been finalized and is immutable
- **Partially Paid:** Invoice has been partially paid
- **Fully Paid:** Invoice completely paid
- **Cancelled:** Invoice was cancelled (by correction invoice)
- **Accepted:** Quote was accepted by customer
- **Turned Down:** Quote was rejected
- **Expired:** Quote has expired
- **Deletable:** Document can be deleted after retention period
- **Obsolete:** Payment reminder is no longer current

Rechnungen durchsuchen

Dokumentenbereich x Dokumentstatus x Zahlungsstatus x

----- bis -----

Status x

Fällige Zahlungen

Fällige Angebote

Hat Skonto

Dokumenttypen x

Angebot

Rechnung

Rechnungskorrektur

Zahlungserinnerung

Entwurf

Veröffentlicht

Storniert

Angenommen

Abgelehnt

Abgelaufen

Löschbar

Obsolet

Unbezahlt

Teilweise abgerechnet

Vollständig abgerechnet

Teilweise bezahlt

Vollständig bezahlt

Überbezahlt

Zurücksetzen

Figure 50: Filter by one or more statuses

Due Payments With this switch, you only show invoices whose due date has been exceeded and which are not yet fully paid.

Rechnungen durchsuchen

Dokumentenbereich x Dokumentstatus x Zahlungsstatus x

----- bis -----

Status x

Fällige Zahlungen

Fällige Angebote

Hat Skonto

Dokumenttypen x

Angebot

Rechnung

Rechnungskorrektur

Zahlungserinnerung

Entwurf

Veröffentlicht

Storniert

Angenommen

Abgelehnt

Abgelaufen

Löschbar

Obsolet

Unbezahlt

Teilweise abgerechnet

Vollständig abgerechnet

Teilweise bezahlt

Vollständig bezahlt

Überbezahlt

Zurücksetzen

Figure 51: Show only overdue invoices

[>] **Power Tip:** This filter is identical to clicking “Overdue” on the dash-

board – use it for your daily dunning management.

Due Quotes This switch shows only quotes whose expiration date has been exceeded and which are still awaiting feedback.

Rechnungen durchsuchen

Dokumentenbereich × Dokumentstatus × Zahlungsstatus ×

----- bis -----

Status ×

- Fällige Zahlungen
- Fällige Angebote
- Hat Skonto

Dokumententypen ×

- Angebot
- Rechnung
- Rechnungskorrektur
- Zahlungserinnerung

Dokumentstatus

- Entwurf
- Veröffentlicht
- Storniert
- Angenommen
- Abgelehnt
- Abgelaufen
- Löschbar
- Obsolet

Zahlungsstatus

- Unbezahlt
- Teilweise abgerechnet
- Vollständig abgerechnet
- Teilweise bezahlt
- Vollständig bezahlt
- Überbezahlt

Zurücksetzen

Figure 52: Show only expired quotes

Document Range (From/To Date) Filter documents by their document date (e.g., invoice date or quote date):

1. Click **From** to select a start date
2. Click **To** to select an end date
3. The list shows only documents within this time period

🔍 Rechnungen durchsuchen ℹ️

Dokumentenbereich × <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; border-radius: 5px; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> 2024 bis 2025 </div>	Dokumentstatus × <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Entwurf <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Veröffentlicht <input type="checkbox"/> Storniert <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Angenommen <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Abgelehnt <input type="checkbox"/> Abgelaufen <input type="checkbox"/> Löschbar <input type="checkbox"/> Obsolet	Zahlungsstatus × <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Unbezahlt <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Teilweise abgerechnet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Vollständig abgerechnet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Teilweise bezahlt <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Vollständig bezahlt <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Überbezahlt	Status × <input type="checkbox"/> Fällige Zahlungen <input type="checkbox"/> Fällige Angebote <input type="checkbox"/> Hat Skonto
Dokumenttypen × <input type="checkbox"/> Angebot <input type="checkbox"/> Rechnung <input type="checkbox"/> Rechnungskorrektur <input type="checkbox"/> Zahlungserinnerung			

[Zurücksetzen](#)

Figure 53: Filter documents by creation period

[i] Pro Tip: You can set only “From” or only “To” – the fields are independent of each other.

Reset Filters

Click **Reset** at the bottom of the filter panel to remove all filters at once.

🔍 Rechnungen durchsuchen ℹ️

Dokumentenbereich × <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; border-radius: 5px; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> ---- bis ---- </div>	Dokumentstatus × <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Entwurf <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Veröffentlicht <input type="checkbox"/> Storniert <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Angenommen <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Abgelehnt <input type="checkbox"/> Abgelaufen <input type="checkbox"/> Löschbar <input type="checkbox"/> Obsolet	Zahlungsstatus × <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Unbezahlt <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Teilweise abgerechnet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Vollständig abgerechnet <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Teilweise bezahlt <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Vollständig bezahlt <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Überbezahlt	Status × <input type="checkbox"/> Fällige Zahlungen <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Fällige Angebote <input type="checkbox"/> Hat Skonto
Dokumenttypen × <input type="checkbox"/> Angebot <input type="checkbox"/> Rechnung <input type="checkbox"/> Rechnungskorrektur <input type="checkbox"/> Zahlungserinnerung			

[Zurücksetzen](#)

Figure 54: Reset all filters with one click

Reactivate Filters

If you've created a new document, filters are automatically temporarily deactivated so you can see the new document immediately. A yellow banner appears with the note "Filters were temporarily suspended". Click **Reactivate filters** to restore the previous filters.



Figure 55: Reactivate filters after creating a document

3.3 Create Document

Create New Quote or Invoice

1. Click + **Create New** in the header
2. Select from the dropdown menu:
 - **New Invoice:** For a payment request
 - **New Quote:** For a non-binding offer

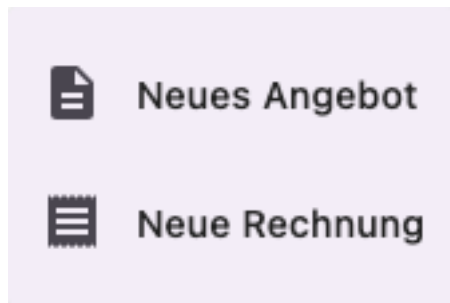


Figure 56: Choose between invoice and quote

The application opens the creation form in **Draft** status.

Figure 57: The creation form for a new document

[i] Pro Tip: You can also **duplicate** an existing document to use it as a template (see section “Duplicate Document”).

3.4 Edit Document (Draft)

In draft mode, you can freely edit all fields. Once a document is **published**, it becomes immutable (GoBD compliance).

General Information

Tenant (Sender) Select the tenant (your company) that appears as sender on the document. This also determines: - Logo and company data on the PDF - Numbering scheme (e.g., RE-2024- for tenant A, RE-2025- for tenant B) - Bank details for payment information

[Screenshot: Tenant selection] *Figure 58: Select the tenant for this document*

[!] Important: The tenant cannot be changed after saving, as the document number uniquely belongs to the tenant.

Customer (Recipient) Select the customer from the dropdown list. The application automatically loads: - Address data for the document - Customer's default currency - Payment terms (if stored) - E-invoicing settings (ZUGFeRD/XRechnung)

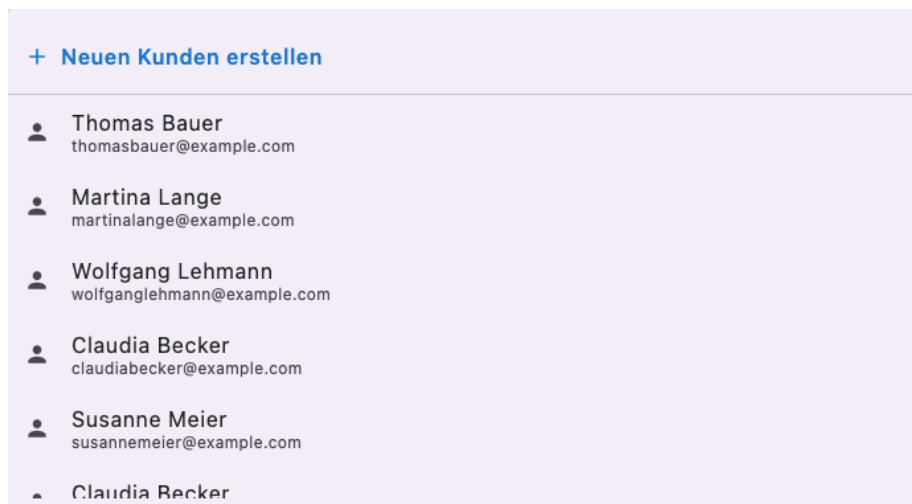


Figure 59: Select the customer for the document

If the customer doesn't exist yet: 1. Click + **Create new customer** 2. The customer creation form opens 3. After saving, the new customer is automatically selected

[i] **Pro Tip:** Linked data (address, currency) are permanently saved in the document when published – subsequent changes to the customer master data do not affect already published documents.

Document Number The document number is automatically generated as soon as you save the document for the first time. The format is based on the selected tenant's numbering pattern, e.g.: - Invoices: RE-2024-001, RE-2024-002, ... - Quotes: ANG-2024-001, ANG-2024-002, ... - Correction invoices: RE-2024-001-KORR - Payment reminders: MAH-2024-001-L1 (Level 1), MAH-2024-001-L2 (Level 2), ...

[Screenshot: Document number displayed] *Figure 60: The document number is automatically assigned*

[!] **Important:** Document numbers are unique and sequential. You cannot manually change them to ensure unbroken numbering sequences (GoBD requirement).

Document Date Set the document date: - **Invoices:** Invoice date (important for payment terms and tax period) - **Quotes:** Quote date - **Correction**

invoices: Correction date - **Payment reminders:** Reminder date

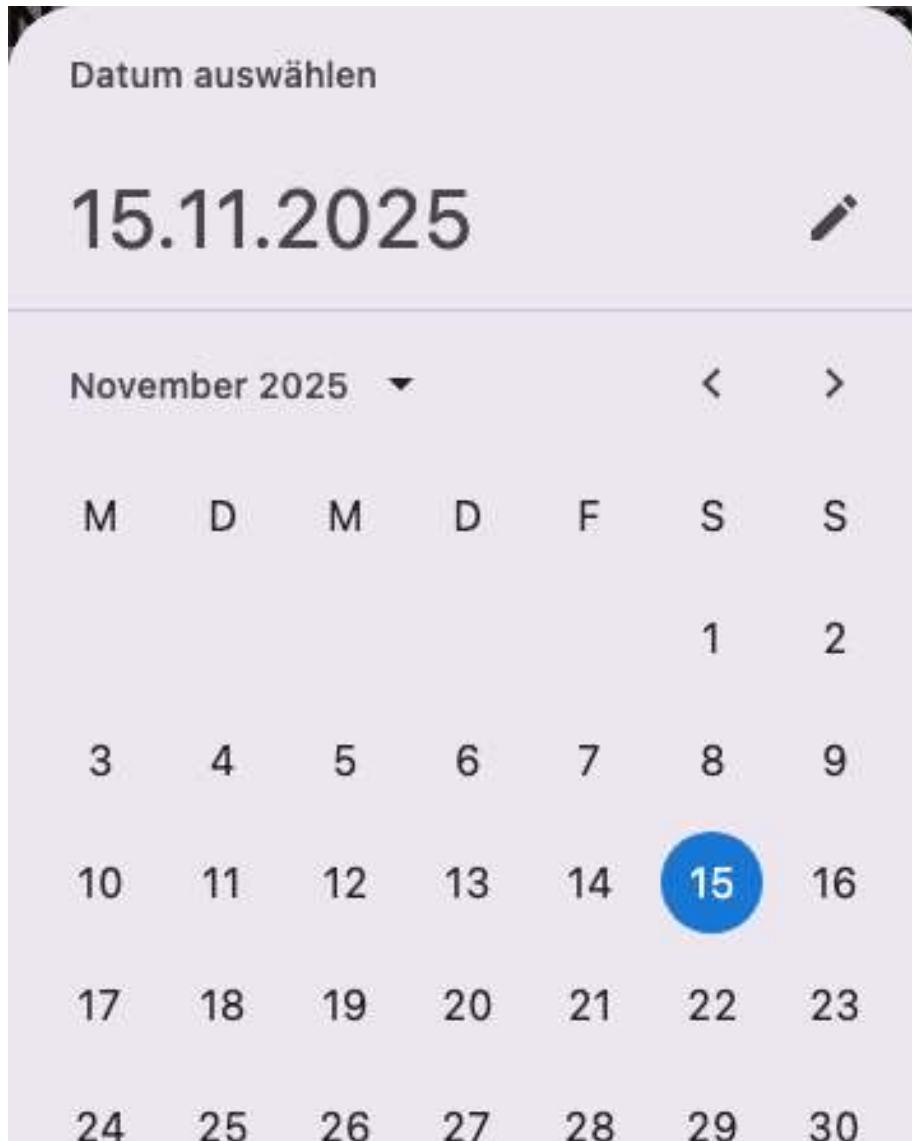


Figure 61: Select the document date via calendar

[i] **Pro Tip:** The document date defaults to today but can be freely adjusted.

Due Date / Action Date Depending on document type:

- **Invoices:** Payment term (due date) – default is 14 days after invoice date
- **Quotes:** Expiration date – until when the quote is valid

- **Payment reminders:** Payment term for the reminder

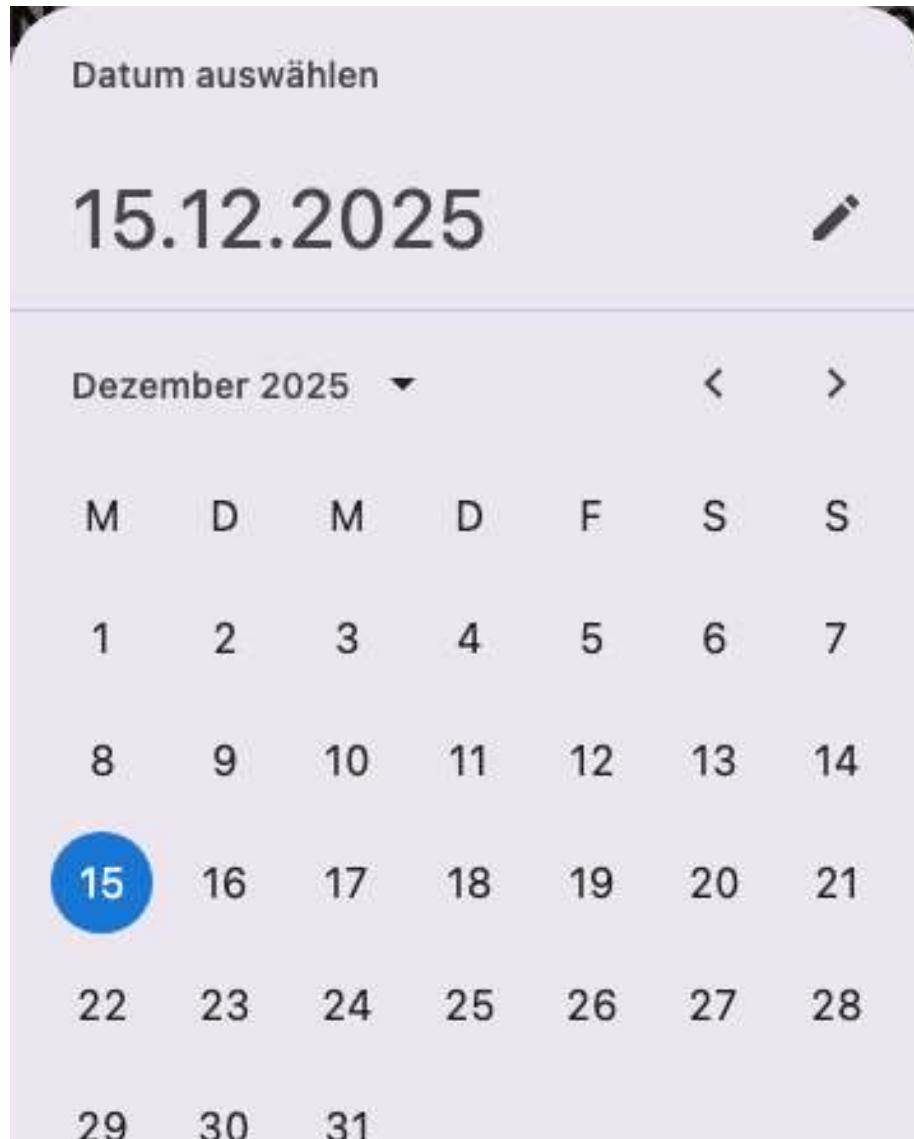


Figure 62: Set the due or expiration date

[i] **Pro Tip:** You can store individual payment terms in customer settings – these are automatically pre-filled.

Delivery Date (required) For **invoices** and **invoice corrections**, you must specify a **delivery date**. It is printed on the PDF document.



Figure 63: Set the delivery date

Service Period Start (optional) If you set a **service period start** date, the document represents a **service period**. In that case, the **delivery date** becomes the **end** of the service period.

Order ID / Contract ID (optional) You can optionally store an **order ID** and/or **contract ID** for internal reference (e.g., to match an ERP/order system). These values are stored with the document data.

Line Items

Line items represent the services or products to be billed.

Add Line Item

1. Click **Add line item** below the line item table
2. A new empty row is inserted

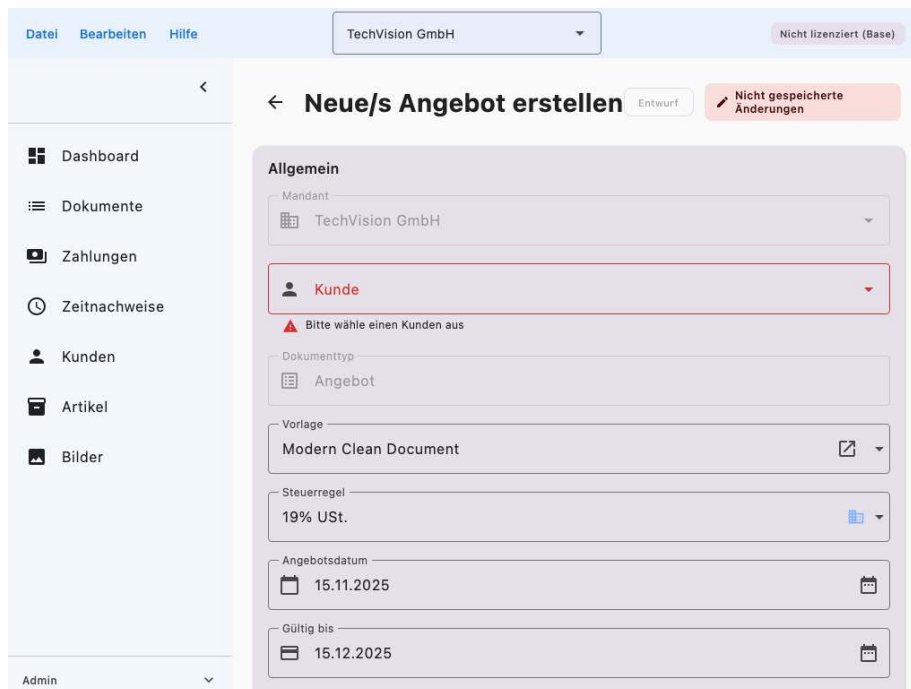


Figure 64: Add a new line item with the + button

Edit Line Item Each line item has the following fields:

- **Description:** Description of service or product (required field)
- **Quantity:** Number or hours (required field, decimals possible)
- **Unit price:** Price per unit in document currency (required field)
- **VAT %:** Value-added tax rate (e.g., 19%, 7%, 0%) (required field)

Beschreibung	Menge	Einheit	Betrag (€)	USt %	Betrag
Beratungsleistung	8	Stun	120	19	960,00 €

Figure 65: Edit the fields of a line item

The application automatically calculates: - **Subtotal** = Quantity × Unit price
- **VAT amount** = Subtotal × (VAT % / 100) - **Total** = Sum of all subtotals + Sum of all VAT amounts

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use the **Tab key** to quickly jump between fields and efficiently enter multiple line items.

Optional (Alternative) Line Items in Quotes In **quotes**, you can mark a line item as **optional** (alternative). Optional items are shown in the export (PDF/HTML) with an **Optional** badge, but they **do not contribute to totals**.

- Use the **layers icon** at the end of the line item row to toggle a line item as optional.
- You can optionally assign a **group name** (e.g., “Premium”) so multiple optional items belong to the same alternative group.
- When converting a quote to a **standard invoice**, you select which optional groups should be included. Selected optional items become **normal** invoice items.
- When converting to **partial** or **final** invoices, optional items are not carried over.

Add Line Item From Product If you maintain product master data, you can add pre-filled line items:

1. In the line items header, click **Add line item from product**
2. Search and select a product
3. The new line item is filled with the product’s defaults (price, unit, tax rule, description)

You can still edit all fields after adding the product.

[?] **Continue reading:** Product management and CSV import/export are described in Chapter 7 (Products).

Delete Line Item Click the **trash icon** to the right of the line item to remove it.

[Screenshot: Delete line item] *Figure 66: Delete a line item with the trash icon*

Text-Only Line Items In addition to regular billed line items, you can add **text-only line items** to any document. A text-only item is purely presentational – it does **not** contribute to the document total and is not billed.

When to use text-only items: - Section headings within the line item table (e.g., “Phase 1: Design”, “Phase 2: Development”) - Separator lines or space between item groups - A “Thank you for your business!” note embedded within the line items - Company images or logos to be displayed between item blocks - Any descriptive text that should appear inline with the line items

Adding a text-only item:

1. Click the dropdown arrow next to **Add line item**
2. Select **Add text-only item**
3. A new row is inserted with a text editor (Markdown supported)

[Screenshot: Add text-only line item] *Figure XX: Dropdown showing the text-only item option*

Adding an image to a text-only item:

1. Click the **image icon** inside the text-only item row
2. Select an image file from your computer (JPEG or PNG, max. 2 MB recommended)
3. The image is embedded in the line item

[Screenshot: Text-only item with image] *Figure XX: A text-only item displaying a company graphic*

How text-only items appear on the PDF:

- They are printed in the line item table at their position
- They have no quantity, unit price, or tax columns
- They are visually distinct from billed items (no amount columns)
- Images are rendered inline at the position in the table

[!] **Note:** Text-only items are never included in totals, never subject to tax, and do not affect the invoice balance. They are purely decorative/structural.

The application validates line items in real-time: - Empty descriptions are marked red with “Required field” - Invalid numbers are marked with “Must be a valid number”

[!] **Important:** You cannot publish the document as long as validation errors exist. *Figure 67: Validation errors are displayed directly below the field*

[!] **Important:** You cannot publish the document as long as validation errors exist.

Text Snippets

Text snippets are reusable text blocks (e.g., introductions, payment notes, closing formulas) that you can add to your documents. They support **Markdown formatting** for bold text, lists, and more.

Add Text Snippet

1. Scroll to the **Text blocks** section below the line items
2. Click **Add text block**
3. Select a text snippet from the dropdown list
4. Choose the **position**:
 - **Before line items:** Text appears above the line item table (e.g., introduction text)
 - **After line items:** Text appears below the line item table (e.g., payment notes, closing formula)

[Screenshot: Add text snippet] *Figure 68: Add a text snippet and choose the position*

Remove Text Snippet Click the **X icon** to the right of the text snippet to remove it.

[Screenshot: Remove text snippet] *Figure 69: Remove a text snippet with the X icon*

[i] **Pro Tip:** You can add multiple text snippets – they appear in the order you add them.

[*] **Workflow Tip:** Create standard snippets for common scenarios (e.g., “Payment note 14 days”, “Project start introduction”) and add them quickly via dropdown.

Text Snippets Library Empty If you haven’t created any text snippets yet, the application shows a note:

“Create a text block first to use it here.”

Click **Manage text snippets** in the sidebar to create new snippets (see Chapter 7).

Textbausteine

Zahlungshinweise

Bitte überweise den Rechnungsbetrag innerhalb von 14 Tagen.

Aktion: Entfernen

Figure 70: Note when no text snippets exist yet

Description / Notes (optional)

In the **Description** field, you can store internal notes about the document. These do **not** appear on the PDF, but are only visible to you.

Textbaustein-Bibliothek

Keine Textbausteine vorhanden
Erstelle zuerst wiederverwendbare Textbausteine in den Einstellungen.

Figure 71: Internal notes for the document

[i] Pro Tip: Use this field for project notes, follow-up questions, or context information.

3.5 Save Document

Save as Draft

Click **Save** (or “Save quote” / “Save invoice”) to save the document as a draft. The document: - Receives a document number (if not already present) - Remains editable - Appears in the document list with status “Draft”

Beschreibung
Projektbegleitung November 2025 mit Abrechnung nach Aufwand.

Figure 72: Save the document as draft

[i] Pro Tip: Save regularly to avoid losing your work. The application doesn't save automatically.

Go Back Without Saving

Click the **back arrow** in the upper left corner to return to the previous screen. If you have unsaved changes, a dialog appears:

Unsaved Changes

“You have unsaved changes. Do you really want to continue?”

- **Discard:** Changes will not be saved
- **Cancel:** Stay in the form

Angebot speichern

changes

Figure 73: Warning for unsaved changes

[!] **Important:** Unsaved changes are irretrievably lost if you choose “Discard”.

3.6 Document Status and Lifecycle

Each document type goes through a defined lifecycle with different statuses. The statuses determine which actions are possible.

Status Overview

Draft

- Document is fully editable
- Can be deleted
- Can be duplicated (except invoice corrections)
- **Next step:** Publish

Published

- Document is **immutable** (GoBD compliance)
- Receives a timestamp `published_at`
- Can be exported (PDF with optional ZUGFeRD/XRechnung)
- Cannot be deleted (only after 10-year retention period)
- **Next steps** (depending on document type):
 - **Invoice:** Record payment, create reminder, cancel
 - **Quote:** Mark as accepted/rejected, create invoice

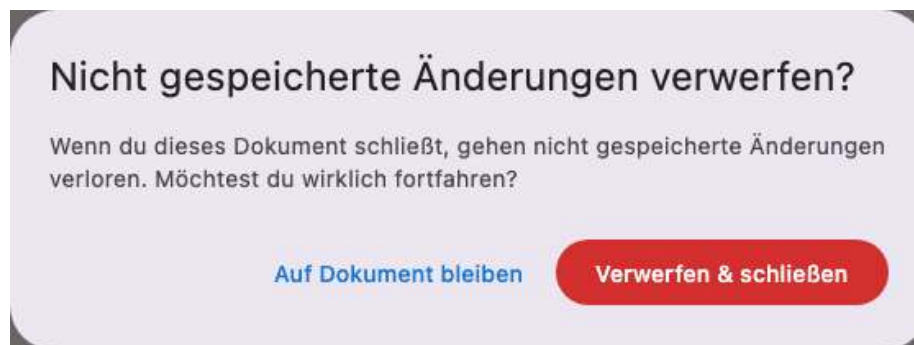


Figure 74: Published document with status badge

Additional Statures (depending on document type)

- **Partially Paid** (Invoice): Part of the invoice amount has been paid
- **Fully Paid** (Invoice): Invoice amount fully paid
- **Cancelled** (Invoice): Invoice was cancelled by correction invoice

- **Accepted** (Quote): Customer accepted quote
- **Turned Down** (Quote): Customer rejected quote
- **Expired** (Quote): Quote is past expiration date
- **Obsolete** (Payment Reminder): Reminder is no longer current (e.g., due to payment)
- **Deletable** (all types): Document can be deleted after 10-year retention period

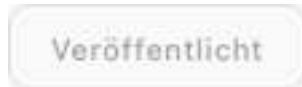


Figure 75: Overview of different document statuses with color coding

Status Transitions

The application always shows you the possible **Next Steps** based on the current status.



Figure 76: The action buttons show available next steps

3.7 Publish Document

Publishing a document is the most important step in the lifecycle. After that, the document becomes **immutable**.

Prerequisites

Before publishing, the application checks: - [+] Customer selected - [+] At least one line item present - [+] All fields valid (no red validation errors)

Perform Publication

1. Click **Publish** in the “Next Steps” section
2. A confirmation dialog appears:

Publish quote?

“After publishing the quote, you can no longer change it.”

- **Publish:** Confirm
- **Cancel:** Abort operation

The screenshot shows a quote management interface for quote ID 'Q-2025-42'. The quote is currently in 'Angebot' (Offer) status. The interface is divided into several sections:

- Kunde:** Thomas Bauer, Kirchstraße 71, 86150 Augsburg, Deutschland. Kundenummer: 50000. Käuferreferenz: CUST-REF-50000.
- Daten:** Dokumentdatum: 15.11.2025, Fälligkeitsdatum: 15.12.2025.
- Positionen:** A table with 5 columns: #, Beschreibung, Menge, Einzelpreis, MwSt., Gesamt. Row 1: 1, Beratungsleistung, 8 Stunden, 120,00 €, 19%, 960,00 €.
- Umsatzsteuerübersicht:** 19% USt.: 960,00 €, + Umsatzsteuer: 182,40 €.
- Bankinformationen:** (Section header visible).
- Veröffentlichung:** A 'Veröffentlicht' button is visible in the top right.
- Dokument:** Verfällt: 15.12.2025. Actions: Vorschau / PDF, E-Mail senden.
- Nächste Schritte:** Als angenommen markieren, Abgelehnt, Rechnung erstellen.
- Weitere Aktionen:** Duplizieren, Protokoll anzeigen.

Figure 77: Confirmation dialog when publishing a quote

3. After confirmation:

- Status changes to **Published**
- Timestamp `published_at` is set
- All fields become write-protected (gray background)
- New actions become available (e.g., “Create invoice”, “Record payment”)

The dialog is titled 'Dokument veröffentlichen?' and contains the text: 'Nach der Veröffentlichung des Angebots kannst du dieses nicht mehr ändern.' At the bottom, there are two buttons: 'Abbrechen' (Cancel) and 'Dokument veröffentlichen' (Publish Document).

Figure 78: Published document with write-protected fields

[i] **Pro Tip:** Check all data carefully before publishing – there’s no going back.

[>>] **Power Tip:** Use the **PDF preview** (see section “PDF Export”) to check the document before publishing or exporting.

3.8 Record Payment

For invoices, you can record payment receipts to track payment status.

Add Payment

1. Open the published invoice
2. Click **Record payment** in the “Next Steps” section
3. A dialog opens:

The screenshot shows a dialog titled "Angebot aktualisieren" with a "Veröffentlicht" button in the top right. The dialog is divided into two main sections: "Allgemein" and "Bankinformationen".

Allgemein

- Mandant: TechVision GmbH
- Kunde: Thomas Bauer
- Vorlage: Modern Clean Document
- Dokumenttyp: Angebot
- Steuerregel: 19% USt.
- Angebotsnummer: # Q-2025-42
- Angebotsdatum: 15.11.2025
- Gültig bis: 15.12.2025

Bankinformationen

Profilname	Typ	QR-Code erzeugen
Bank transfer	Banküberweisung	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Figure 79: Dialog for recording a payment

Fields in Payment Dialog

- **Payment amount:** Amount of payment in document currency
- **Payment date:** When the payment was received

- **Auto-calculate payment:** If enabled, the remaining amount is automatically pre-filled

[i] **Pro Tip:** Enable “Auto-calculate payment” to enter the exact remaining amount for full payment.

Partial Payments

You can record multiple payments if the customer pays in installments:

1. Record the first partial payment → Status changes to **Partially Paid**
2. Record additional payments until the amount is reached → Status changes to **Fully Paid**

Zahlung hinzufügen

RE-2025-79 - Restbetrag: 1.142,40 €

Vollständig
Mit Skonto
Teilzahlung

Zahlungsdatum

📅 19.03.2026 🗓️

Buchungsdatum

📅 19.03.2026 🗓️

Betrag

1.142,40 €

Zahlungsart

Banküberweisung

Externe Referenz

Notizen

Abbrechen
Zahlung erfassen

Figure 80: Document with partial payment shows the remaining amount

The application shows you: - **Amount paid:** Sum of all payments - **Remaining amount:** Outstanding amount (Total - Amount paid)

Overpayment

If the customer pays more than the invoice amount (e.g., for tip or rounding), the application accepts this. The status still changes to **Fully Paid**.

Teilweise bezahlt
Rechnung RE-2025-018
Bezahlt: 500,00 EUR
Offen: 740,00 EUR

Figure 81: Overpayment is accepted and marked as fully paid

Undo Payment

If you recorded a payment by mistake (e.g., wrong amount, wrong date, or a transfer that never actually arrived), you can reverse it.

How to undo a payment:

1. Open the invoice whose payment you want to reverse
2. In the detail panel, find the **Payments** section – all recorded payments are listed there
3. Click the undo icon next to the payment you want to reverse
4. Confirm the action in the dialog

Überzahlung
Rechnung RE-2025-021
Zahlungseingang: 1.350,00 EUR
Guthaben: 110,00 EUR

Figure XX: The undo button next to each recorded payment

When is undoing a payment appropriate?

- A payment was entered with the wrong amount
- A payment was assigned to the wrong invoice
- A customer's bank transfer was reversed (chargeback)

What happens after undoing?

- If the invoice was **Fully Paid**, it returns to **Published** (unpaid)
- If the invoice was **Partially Paid** and other payments remain, the status is recalculated from the remaining payments
- If all payments are removed, the invoice returns to **Published** (unpaid)

[!] **Note:** Undoing a payment removes the payment record but does **not** delete the **audit log entry**. The audit log faithfully records that a payment was created and subsequently reversed, preserving your complete audit trail.

3.9 Create Invoice from Quote

Once a quote has been accepted, you can create an invoice directly from it.

Workflow: Quote → Invoice

1. Open the published quote
2. Click **Mark as accepted** (optional but recommended)
3. Click **Create invoice**
4. The application creates a new invoice draft with:
 - Same line items and text snippets
 - Reference to the quote (source document)
 - New invoice number
 - Today's invoice date and adjusted payment term

Zahlungen



Zahlung vom 12.11.2025
500,00 EUR
Banküberweisung
Aktion: Zahlung rückgängig machen

Figure 82: “Create invoice” button on published quote

5. Edit the invoice if needed (e.g., adjust date, add line items)
6. Save and publish the invoice

[i] Pro Tip: The link to the quote remains – you see the quote number in the “Source” field.

Nächste Schritte

Rechnung erstellen

Angebot ansehen

Figure 83: Invoice shows the linked quote in the “Source” field

[*] Workflow Tip (5–10 minutes): 1. Create quote and send to customer (3 minutes) 2. Wait for feedback 3. Mark quote as accepted (10 seconds) 4. Create invoice (30 seconds) 5. Publish and export invoice (1 minute)

3.10 Create Payment Reminder (Dunning)

If an invoice is overdue, you can create a payment reminder (dunning letter).

Prerequisites

The application shows the **Create payment reminder** button only when: -
[+] Invoice is **published** or **partially paid** - [+] Due date has been exceeded
- [+] No active payment reminder exists

Create Reminder

1. Open the overdue invoice
2. Click **Create payment reminder** in the “Next Steps” section
3. The application creates a new reminder draft with:
 - Reference to the original invoice (Source field)
 - Escalation level (Level 1, Level 2, Level 3, ...)
 - New date and new payment term
 - Line items of the original invoice

Verknüpfte Dokumente

Ursprungsangebot: Q-2025-009
Rechnung: RE-2025-009
Status: Abgerechnet

Figure 84: “Create payment reminder” button on overdue invoice

4. Edit the reminder if needed (e.g., add text snippets, add dunning fees)
5. Save and publish the reminder

Escalation Levels

The application automatically assigns escalation levels: - **Level 1**: First payment reminder (e.g., MAH-2024-001-L1) - **Level 2**: Second reminder (e.g., MAH-2024-001-L2) - **Level 3**: Third reminder (e.g., MAH-2024-001-L3)

Mahnung

Mahnung erstellen

Zahlung erfassen

Figure 85: Reminder shows escalation level in badge

[i] **Pro Tip**: The escalation level automatically appears in the document number and status badge.

Mark Reminder as Obsolete

If the customer has paid in the meantime or an out-of-court settlement has been reached, you can mark the reminder as **obsolete**:

1. Open the published reminder
2. Click **Mark as obsolete**
3. Status changes to **Obsolete**

Mahnstufe 1

Mahnstufe 2

Mahnstufe 3

Figure 86: “Mark as obsolete” button on published reminder

3.11 Invoice Correction Options

If you need to correct or cancel an invoice, the application provides three options to handle different scenarios while maintaining GoBD compliance.

Prerequisites

You can correct an invoice if it is: - [+] **Published** or **partially paid**

[!] **Important:** Fully paid invoices can no longer be corrected or cancelled.

Perform Correction

1. Open the published invoice
2. Click **Correct Invoice** in the “Next Steps” section
3. A dialog appears with three options:

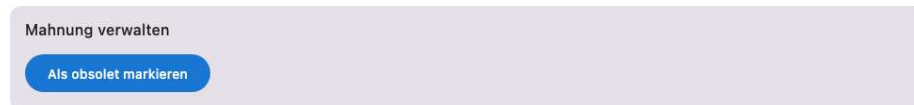


Figure 87: Dialog for choosing the correction type

Option 1: Full Cancellation (Cancellation Invoice / Stornorechnung)

The application: 1. Creates a new cancellation invoice with negated line items (negative amounts matching the full original) 2. Automatically publishes the cancellation invoice 3. Sets the original invoice to **Cancelled** status 4. Links both documents

When to use? - Invoice was issued to the wrong customer - Invoice was completely incorrect - Full refund is required



Figure 88a: Cancellation invoice with fully negated line items

Option 2: Partial Adjustment (Invoice Correction / Rechnungskorrektur)

The application: 1. Creates a new correction invoice as a **Draft** 2. Allows you to edit specific line items to adjust partial amounts 3. You must manually publish the correction after editing

When to use? - Only specific line items need adjustment - Partial refund is required - You need to customize the correction before sending

[i] Pro Tip: After selecting this option, you can modify the correction draft to reflect only the specific adjustments needed, rather than negating the entire invoice.

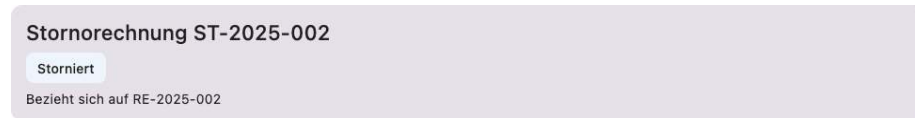


Figure 88b: Correction invoice draft ready for editing

Option 3: Cancel and Replace (Invoice Revision / Rechnungsberichtigung) The application: 1. Creates a cancellation invoice with fully negated line items 2. Automatically publishes the cancellation invoice 3. Creates a new invoice **Draft** with the same content as the original 4. The new draft has a new invoice number and can be edited before publishing

When to use? - Minor errors need correction (wrong address, typo in description) - You need to issue a corrected version of the same invoice - The customer should receive a replacement invoice

[i] Pro Tip: This is the recommended option when you need to fix small mistakes. The new draft preserves all line items, so you can quickly make corrections and publish.

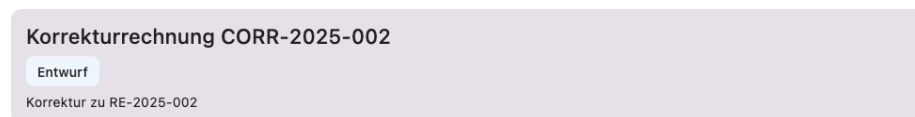


Figure 88c: New invoice draft created as replacement

[*] Workflow Tip (2–3 minutes): 1. Choose “Cancel and Replace” option (30 seconds) 2. Export and archive the cancellation invoice (30 seconds) 3. Edit the new draft with corrections (1 minute) 4. Publish and export the corrected invoice (1 minute)

3.12 Duplicate Document

To save time, you can use an existing document as a template for a new document.

Note: Invoice correction documents cannot be duplicated.

Perform Duplication

1. Click the **three-dot menu** to the right of the document in the document list
2. Select **Duplicate**
3. A confirmation dialog appears:

Duplicate invoice?

“A copy of invoice RE-2024-005 will be created as a new draft. Continue?”

- **Duplicate:** Confirm
- **Cancel:** Abort operation

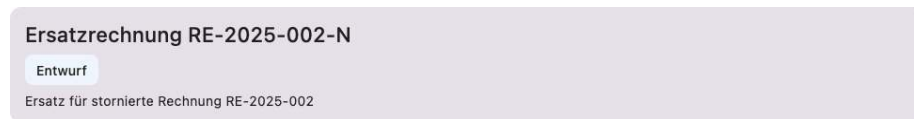


Figure 89: Confirmation dialog when duplicating an invoice

4. The application creates a new draft with:
 - Same line items and text snippets
 - New document number
 - Today's date
 - Status **Draft**



Figure 90: The duplicated document is a new draft

[i] **Pro Tip:** Duplicates are ideal for recurring invoices (e.g., monthly maintenance contracts).

[>>] **Power Tip:** Combine duplication with text snippets to create standard invoices in seconds.

3.13 PDF Export and Preview

The application creates professional PDF documents with optional ZUGFeRD or XRechnung integration.

Show PDF Preview

1. Open the document (draft or published)
2. Click **Preview** in the toolbar
3. The application generates a temporary PDF and displays it in the browser viewer

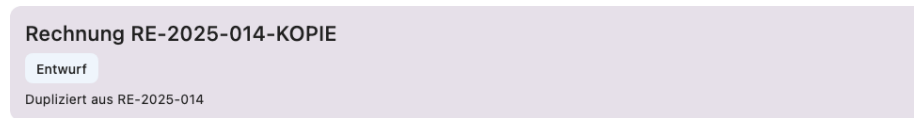


Figure 91: “Preview” button in the toolbar



Figure 92: PDF preview in browser viewer

[i] Pro Tip: Use the preview to check the layout and all content before publishing or exporting the document.

Export PDF

1. Open the published document
2. Click **Export** in the toolbar
3. A file selection dialog opens
4. Choose the storage location and filename
5. Click **Save**



Figure 93: “Export” button in the toolbar

The application: - Generates the PDF with all data, line items, and text snippets - Optionally embeds ZUGFeRD/XRechnung XML (if enabled for customer) - Saves the file in the selected directory - Shows a success message with the file path

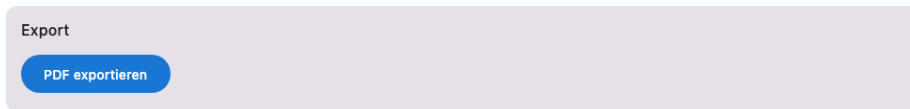


Figure 94: Success message after PDF export

ZUGFeRD and XRechnung

If you've enabled **ZUGFeRD** or **XRechnung** in customer settings, the corresponding XML is automatically embedded in the PDF:

- **ZUGFeRD**: XML data according to ZUGFeRD standard (machine-readable)
- **XRechnung**: XML data according to XRechnung standard (for public contractors)

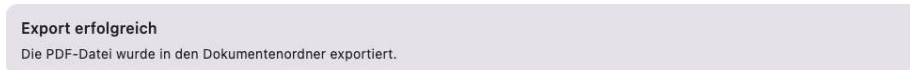


Figure 95: Customer settings with enabled ZUGFeRD

[i] Pro Tip: ZUGFeRD PDFs can be automatically read by modern accounting software – saving your customer time.

Export History

The application logs every export with: - Date and time - Filename and path - SHA-256 hash of the file (for integrity verification)

You can view the export history in the audit log (see Chapter 10 “GoBD Compliance”).

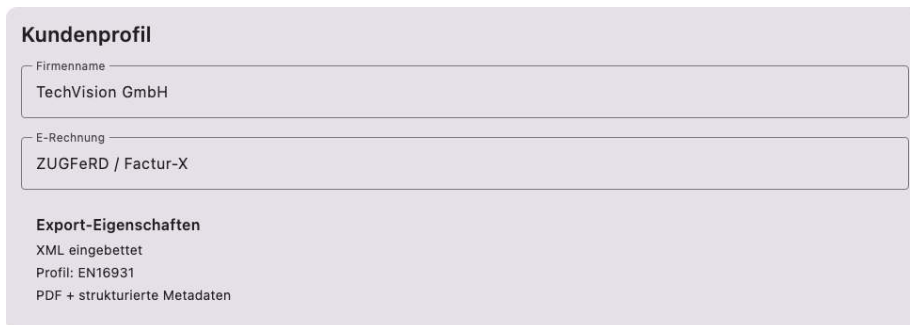


Figure 96: Export history with verification status

[*] Workflow Tip: Always export documents immediately after publishing and save them in your archive directory (e.g., ~/Documents/Invoices/2024/).

3.14 Send Document via Email

Invoicer can send a document directly via email using your configured templates and email settings.

Prerequisites

- Configure email sending in **Settings** (see Chapter 9: Email)
- Maintain customer email addresses (billing/general) in **Customers**
- The document should be in a state that can be exported (typically **published**)

Send an Email

1. Open the document
2. Click **Send via email** (or the email action in the toolbar)
3. In the dialog, select the recipient:
 - **Billing email** (recommended for invoices)
 - **General email**
 - **One-off email address** (manual input)
4. Review and edit **Subject** and **Body**
 - Defaults come from your **Document Emails** templates
 - The body supports **Markdown**
5. (Optional) Insert tokens into subject/body using the token list
6. Use **Preview** to validate the final email
7. Click **Send**

[!] **Important:** If the dialog shows warnings about unknown tokens, fix them before sending to avoid placeholders being sent to the customer.

Copy to Sent Folder (IMAP)

If you enabled “copy to sent” via IMAP and the copy fails, the dialog provides a retry flow. You may be asked to confirm or adjust the **Sent folder** name and retry the copy.

3.15 Delete Document

Delete Drafts

Drafts can be deleted at any time:

1. Click the **three-dot menu** to the right of the draft in the document list
2. Select **Delete**
3. A confirmation dialog appears:

Delete draft?

“Do you really want to delete the draft”RE-2024-007”? This action cannot be undone.”

- **Delete:** Confirm (red button)
- **Cancel:** Abort operation



Figure 97: Confirmation dialog when deleting a draft

[!] **Important:** If the draft originated from another document (e.g., correction invoice), the parent document is reset to its previous state (see warning in dialog).

Delete Published Documents

Published documents **cannot be deleted** to ensure GoBD compliance. They must be retained for 10 years.

After the retention period expires (10 years after full payment or cancellation), the status changes to **Deletable**. Then the actions **Mark as deletable** and **Delete** appear.



Figure 98: Document with status “Deletable” can be deleted

[i] **Pro Tip:** The application automatically calculates the retention period – you don’t need to track anything manually.

3.16 Show Audit Log

Each document has a complete audit log that records all changes and status transitions.

Open Audit Log

1. Open the document

2. Click **Show audit log** in the “Next Steps” section or in the toolbar
3. A dialog opens with the complete history



Figure 99: “Show audit log” button in the toolbar

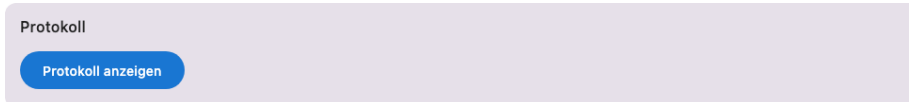


Figure 100: Audit log shows all changes with timestamp

What is Logged?

- **Creation:** When the document was created
- **Status changes:** All transitions (e.g., Draft → Published, Published → Fully Paid)
- **Payments:** Every recorded payment with amount and date
- **Exports:** When the document was exported as PDF (with filename and hash)
- **Changes:** Changes to line items, text snippets, or customer data (only in draft)

[i] **Pro Tip:** The audit log is part of GoBD compliance and cannot be manipulated.

3.17 Practical Workflows

Workflow 1: Quote Process – From Quote to Invoice (5–10 minutes)

Goal: Create a quote, get customer approval, and create the final invoice.

Steps: 1. **Create quote** (3 minutes) - Click + **Create New** → **New Quote** - Select tenant and customer - Add line items - Add text snippets (e.g., “Quote valid until ...”) - Save as draft - Check **PDF preview**

2. **Publish quote** (30 seconds)
 - Click **Publish**
 - Confirm the dialog
 - **Export PDF** and send to customer via email
3. **Wait for feedback** (external waiting time)
 - Customer reviews quote
 - Customer accepts
4. **Mark quote as accepted** (10 seconds)
 - Open the quote

- Click **Mark as accepted**
- 5. **Create invoice from quote** (1 minute)
 - Click **Create invoice**
 - Check line items and date
 - Save as draft
- 6. **Publish and export invoice** (1 minute)
 - Click **Publish**
 - Click **Export**
 - Save PDF in archive directory
 - Send PDF to customer via email

Result: Customer receives binding invoice based on their accepted quote. All steps are audit-proof logged.

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use text snippets for standard phrases like “Thank you for your trust” or “Payable within 14 days”.

Workflow 2: Dunning Management – Process Overdue Invoices (5–10 minutes daily)

Goal: Identify and process overdue invoices.

Steps: 1. **Open dashboard** (10 seconds) - Click **Dashboard** in the sidebar - Check the **Overdue** card

2. **Filter overdue invoices** (10 seconds)
 - Click on the number in the **Overdue** card
 - You automatically land in the document list with “Due payments” filter
3. **Check each invoice** (1–2 minutes per invoice)
 - Open the invoice
 - Check if payment was received (banking app, bank statement)
 - **If paid:** Click **Record payment**, enter amount and date
 - **If not paid:** Check how long overdue (due date)
4. **Create payment reminder** (if necessary, 2 minutes per reminder)
 - Click **Create payment reminder**
 - Optionally add text snippets (e.g., “Friendly payment reminder”)
 - Save and publish
 - Export PDF and send via email
5. **Escalation for repeated reminders** (optional)
 - At Level 2 or Level 3: Add stricter text snippets
 - Increase dunning fees as additional line item if necessary

Result: All overdue invoices are processed, payment receipts recorded, reminders sent.

[>>] **Power Tip:** Perform this workflow daily or weekly to minimize payment defaults.

Workflow 3: Month-End Closing – Export All Invoices (15–30 minutes monthly)

Goal: Export all invoices of the current month for accounting and archiving.

Steps: 1. **Filter document list** (30 seconds) - Click **Documents** in the sidebar - Open the filter panel - Select **Document type:** Invoice - Set **Document range:** From 1st of the month to last day of the month - Click **Apply filters**

2. **Export all invoices** (10–15 minutes)
 - Open each invoice individually
 - Click **Export**
 - Save PDF in archive directory (e.g., ~/Documents/Invoices/2024/November/)
 - Use consistent filenames (e.g., RE-2024-123_CustomerName.pdf)
3. **Check export history** (5 minutes)
 - Open the audit log of an invoice
 - Check that all exports are logged
 - Optional: Perform file integrity check (see Chapter 10 “GoBD Compliance”)
4. **Create backup** (5 minutes)
 - Go to **Settings** → **Backup**
 - Click **Create backup now**
 - Save the backup file on external drive or cloud

Result: All invoices of the month are exported, archived, and backed up. Ready for accounting and tax advisor.

[*] **Workflow Tip:** Create a monthly archive directory (e.g., 2024/November/) to store invoices in a structured way.

3.18 Pro Tips for Efficient Work

[>>] **Use keyboard shortcuts:** - **Tab:** Jump between fields - **Enter:** Save (in many dialogs) - **Esc:** Close dialog

[i] **Duplicates for recurring invoices:** If you send monthly maintenance invoices, duplicate the last invoice and only adjust the date.

[*] **Text snippets for common scenarios:** Create snippets for: - Payment notes (e.g., “Payable within 14 days”) - Project start (e.g., “Thank you for the order. We start on ...”) - Reminders (e.g., “Friendly payment reminder – please transfer by ...”)

[!] **Check filters regularly:** If you don’t see a new document in the list, check if a filter is active (blue badge on filter icon).

[~] **Regular backups:** Create weekly or monthly backups to avoid data loss (see Chapter 9 “Settings”).

[i] **PDF preview before sending:** Always check the PDF preview before sending the document to the customer. Verify: - Customer data correct - Line items and amounts correct - Text snippets appropriate - Payment terms correct

3.19 Related Documents Panel

When documents are linked to each other – for example, an invoice derived from a quote, or a correction invoice created from an original invoice – AG-YNAMIX Invoicer visualizes these connections in the **Related Documents** panel.

Where the Panel Appears

The Related Documents panel is shown in the right-hand detail area whenever you open a document that is part of a document chain. Look for the **Related Documents** section below the document details.



Figure XX: The Related Documents panel showing a linked quote, invoice, and correction

What Links Are Shown

The panel displays the entire document chain, including:

Relationship	Example
Source document	The quote that this invoice was created from
Derived documents	Invoices or reminders that were created from this document
Corrections	Correction invoices that cancel or partially correct this invoice

Each linked document shows its: - Document number - Document type (quote, invoice, correction, reminder) - Current status (Draft, Published, Paid, etc.) - Date

Navigate Between Linked Documents

Click any entry in the Related Documents panel to navigate directly to that document. This makes it easy to trace the full history of a business transaction:

- Start with a quote → see the invoice it turned into
- Open an invoice → see if a payment reminder was sent
- Open a corrected invoice → see the original it corrects

[i] Pro Tip: The Related Documents panel is especially useful during customer disputes or audits – you can trace the complete document trail in a few clicks without using the search field.

3.20 Payment Overview

In addition to the per-invoice payment tracking described in section 3.8, AGYNAMIX Invoicer provides a dedicated **Payment Overview** screen that gives you a bird's-eye view of all payment transactions across all your invoices at once.

How to Open the Payment Overview

Click **Payments** in the left sidebar.

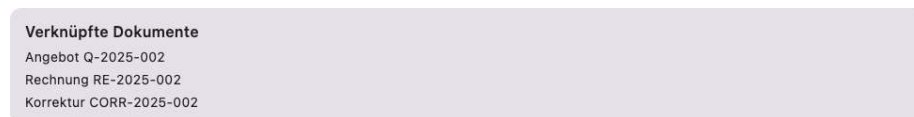


Figure XX: The Payment Overview screen shows all payment transactions across

all documents

What the Payment Overview Shows

The overview lists all payment entries with the following columns:

Column	Description
Document	Invoice number and document type
Customer	Customer name
Amount	Payment amount (or total invoice amount)
Due Date	When the invoice is / was due
Status	Payment status (Overdue, Due Soon, Paid, etc.)

Available Filters

Use the status filters at the top of the screen to focus on what matters most:

Filter	Shows
All	Every invoice with a payment status
Overdue	Invoices past their due date that are not yet paid
Due Soon	Invoices due within the next few days
Paid	Invoices that have been fully paid



Figure XX: The filter tabs narrow the list to the most important items

Visual Payment Badges

Payment status badges (colored indicators) are also shown directly on document list entries and the dashboard summary widgets. These give you an at-a-glance warning for overdue items without navigating to the Payment Overview.

Using the Payment Overview to Manage Receivables

The Payment Overview is designed for a quick daily or weekly check of open receivables:

1. Open the **Payment Overview**
2. Switch to the **Overdue** filter
3. Review which invoices are past due
4. Click any entry to open the invoice and take action (record a payment, send a reminder)

[i] **Pro Tip:** Start your work day with a quick glance at the **Overdue** and **Due Soon** filters – this prevents invoices from slipping through the cracks.

Continue with **Chapter 4: Time Tracking**

4. Time Tracking (Timesheets)

Time Tracking (Timesheets) is the perfect tool for project-based billing according to actual hours worked. Record your working hours continuously, organize them into billing periods, and create professional invoices from them with one click. Ideal for freelancers, consultants, and service providers who bill by the hour.

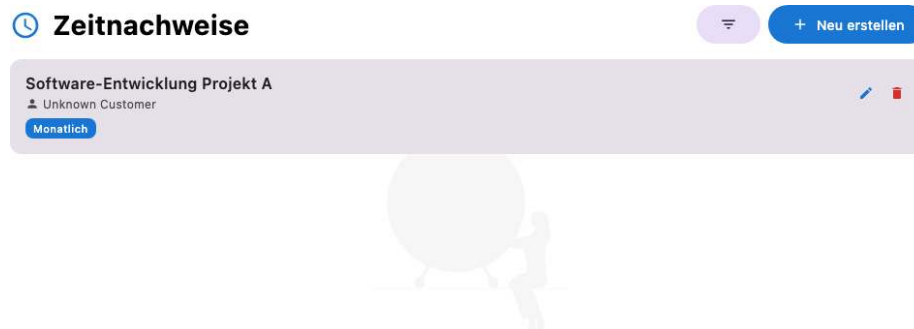


Figure 101: The timesheet list shows all active and archived time tracking records

4.1 Timesheet Concept

A **timesheet** is a container for time entries for a specific customer and project. It defines:

- **Customer:** For whom the work is performed
- **Reporting period:** Weekly, bi-weekly, monthly, or custom
- **Default hourly rate:** Your billing rate (can be overridden per entry)
- **Billing periods:** Automatically calculated time periods that are billed as invoices

Workflow: From Time Tracking to Invoice

1. **Create timesheet:** Define customer, reporting period, and hourly rate
2. **Record time entries:** Enter your hours worked daily or weekly
3. **Finalize period:** Create an invoice from the current time period
4. **Edit invoice:** Adjust the invoice if needed (e.g., add text snippets)
5. **Publish invoice:** Finalize the invoice and export it as PDF



Figure 102: The complete workflow from time tracking to invoice

[i] **Pro Tip:** A timesheet can be used over months – you simply create a new invoice for each reporting period (e.g., each week).

4.2 Timesheet List

The timesheet list is your central workspace for all time tracking records.

List Overview

The list shows for each timesheet:

- **Title:** Descriptive name (e.g., “Project Alpha - January 2025”)
- **Customer:** Customer name
- **Status:** Active or Inactive
- **Reporting period:** Weekly, bi-weekly, monthly, or custom
- **Time period:** Start date (and optional end date)
- **Hourly rate:** Default billing rate

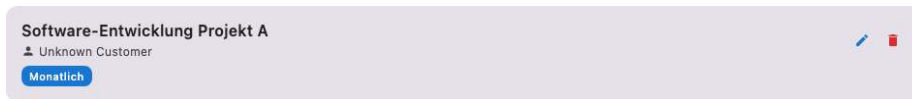


Figure 103: Each entry shows all important information at a glance

Status Display

- **Active:** Timesheet is open for new entries (green badge)
- **Inactive:** Timesheet is archived and read-only (gray badge)

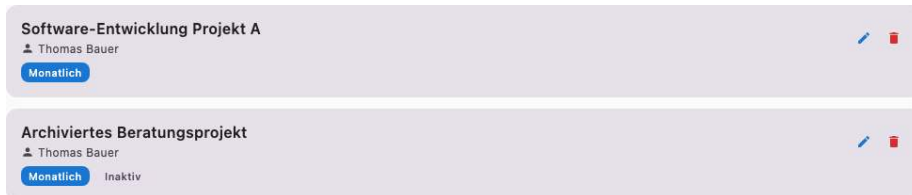


Figure 104: Active and inactive timesheets with color coding

[i] Pro Tip: A customer can only have **one active** timesheet at a time. If you create a new timesheet for the same customer, the old one automatically becomes inactive.

4.3 Filters and Search

Using the Search Field

The search field searches: - Timesheet title - Description - Customer name
The search is real-time – as you type, the list updates immediately.

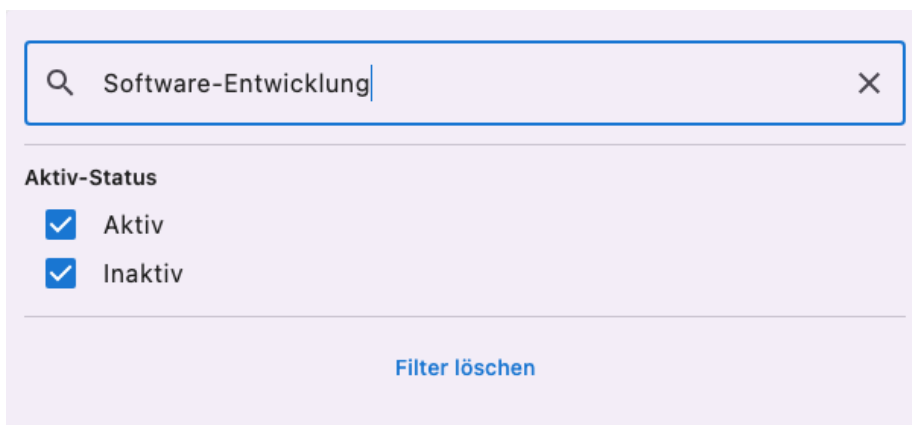


Figure 105: Real-time search finds timesheets by title or customer

Filter by Customer

Click the “**All Customers**” dropdown menu to show only timesheets for a specific customer.

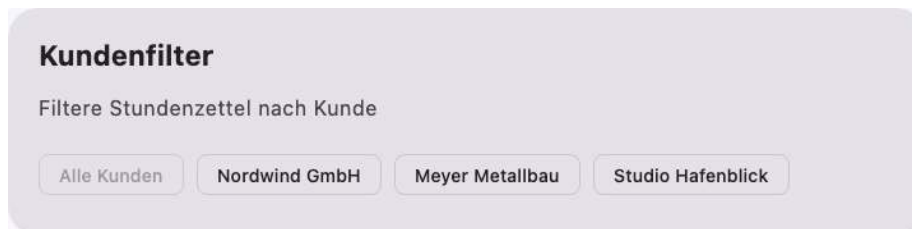


Figure 106: Filter timesheets by customer

Filter by Status

Choose between: - **Active**: Show only active timesheets - **Inactive**: Show only archived timesheets - **All**: Show all timesheets (default)

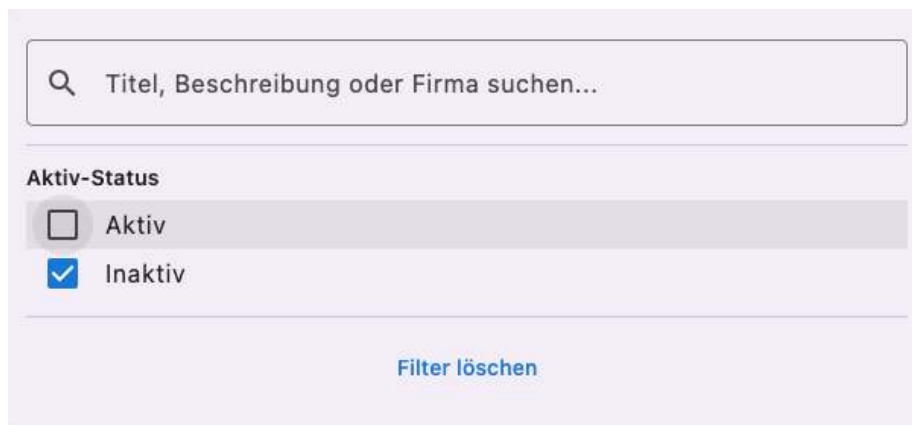


Figure 107: Filter by active or inactive status

4.4 Create Timesheet

Create New Timesheet

1. Click + **Create new timesheet** in the header
2. The creation form opens



Figure 108: Button to create a new timesheet

Form Fields

Basic Information Title (required field) - Descriptive name for the timesheet - Examples: "Project Alpha - Q1 2025", "Consulting Customer XY", "January 2025 - Development"

← **Neuen Zeitrachweis erstellen** ✎ Nicht gespeicherte Änderungen

Kunde & Zeitraum

Mandant * Kunde * × Vorlage

Grundinformationen

Titel des Zeitrachweises * z.B., Januar 2025 - Kundenname

Beschreibung (optional)

Notizen zu diesem Zeitraum hinzufügen

Auftrags-ID (optional) z.B., ORDER-123 Vertrags-ID (optional) z.B., CONTRACT-9

Abrechnungsinformationen

Berichtszeitraum * Standard-Stundensatz * Stundensatz eingeben (z.B., 100.00)

Figure 109: Give the timesheet a meaningful title

Description (optional) - Additional notes or context information - Only visible to you, does not appear on invoices

← **Neuen Zeitnachweis erstellen** ✎ Nicht gespeicherte Änderungen

Kunde & Zeitraum

Mandant * Kunde * Vorlage

Grundinformationen

Titel des Zeitnachweises *

z.B., Januar 2025 - Kundenname

Beschreibung (optional)

Notizen zu diesem Zeitraum hinzufügen

Auftrags-ID (optional) Vertrags-ID (optional)

Abrechnungsinformationen

Berichtszeitraum * Standard-Stundensatz *

Stundensatz eingeben (z.B., 100.00)

Figure 110: Optionally add a description

Customer & Time Period Tenant (required field, read-only) - Your currently selected tenant (company) - Automatically pre-filled

← **Neuen Zeitnachweis erstellen** ✎ Nicht gespeicherte Änderungen

Kunde & Zeitraum

Mandant * Kunde * Vorlage

Grundinformationen

Titel des Zeitnachweises *

z.B., Januar 2025 - Kundenname

Beschreibung (optional)

Notizen zu diesem Zeitraum hinzufügen

Auftrags-ID (optional) Vertrags-ID (optional)

z.B., ORDER-123 z.B., CONTRACT-9

Abrechnungsinformationen

Berichtszeitraum * Standard-Stundensatz *

Stundensatz eingeben (z.B., 100.00)

Figure 111: The tenant is pre-selected

Customer (required field) - Select the customer from the dropdown list - If the customer doesn't exist yet, click + **Create new customer**

Figure 112: Select the customer for this timesheet

[!] **Important:** If the customer already has an active timesheet, a warning appears. You can proceed, but the old timesheet will automatically become inactive and all non-finalized entries will be moved to the new timesheet.

Figure 113: Warning when an active timesheet exists for this customer

Period Start (required field) - Start date of the timesheet - Default: Today - Determines the start of the first billing period

Startdatum
10.03.2026

März 2026

1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21
22	23	24	25	26	27	28
29	30	31				

Figure 114: Select the start date via calendar

Period End (optional) - End date of the timesheet (only for time-limited projects) - If empty: Timesheet runs indefinitely

Enddatum
17.03.2026

Optional

März 2026

1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21
22	23	24	25	26	27	28
29	30	31				

Figure 115: Optionally set an end date

[i] Pro Tip: Leave the end date empty for ongoing projects – you can manually archive the timesheet at any time.

Billing Information Reporting Period (required field)

Choose how often you want to bill:

- **Weekly:** Billing periods from Monday to Sunday (7 days)

- **Bi-weekly:** Billing periods of 14 days (2 weeks)
- **Monthly:** Billing periods from beginning to end of month
- **Custom:** Flexible periods – you decide when the period ends when finalizing

Abrechnungsrhythmus

Abrechnungsrhythmus

Monatlich

Wöchentlich

Zweiwöchentlich

Monatlich

Benutzerdefiniert

Figure 116: Select the billing rhythm

[i] **Pro Tip:** - **Weekly** is ideal for short-term projects with regular billing - **Monthly** is typical for maintenance contracts or retainer models - **Custom** is perfect for irregular or project-based billing

[!] **Important:** The reporting period cannot be changed after creation once a period has been finalized. In this case, create a new timesheet.

Default Hourly Rate (required field)

- Your billing rate per hour in the tenant currency (e.g., EUR)
- Used as default for all time entries
- Can be overridden individually per entry

Figure 117: Set your default hourly rate

[i] Pro Tip: Enter your standard hourly rate – for overtime or special activities, you can later set a different rate for individual entries.

Save Timesheet

Click **Create timesheet** to save the timesheet. The application: - Saves the timesheet with status **Active** - Deactivates any existing active timesheet for the same customer if necessary - Opens the detail view where you can record time entries



Figure 118: Save the timesheet with the create button

4.5 Edit Timesheet

Open Timesheet

Click on a timesheet in the list to open the **detail view**.

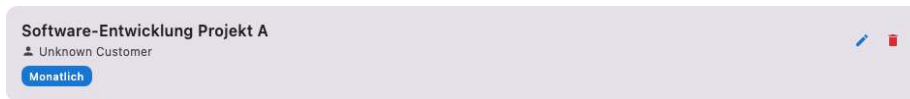


Figure 119: Click on a timesheet to open it

Detail View Overview

The detail view shows:

1. **Header area** with title, customer, and status
2. **Edit button** (pencil icon) to change title, description, and hourly rate
3. **Current period** with all open time entries
4. **Past periods** with finalized (billed) time periods

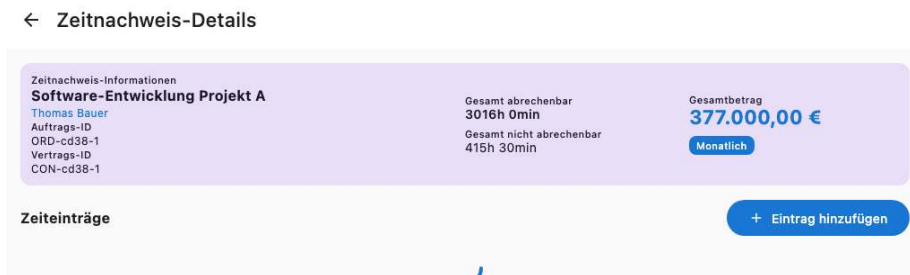


Figure 120: The detail view of an active timesheet

Edit Basic Data

1. Click the **pencil icon** in the header area
2. The edit form opens
3. You can change:
 - Title
 - Description
 - Default hourly rate

[!] **Important:** Customer and reporting period cannot be changed once finalized periods exist.

← **Zeitnachweis aktualisieren**

Kunde & Zeitraum

Mandant * Kunde * Vorlage ▾

Grundinformationen

Titel des Zeitnachweises *
Software-Entwicklung Projekt A
z.B., Januar 2025 - Kundenname

Beschreibung (optional)
Entwicklung und Wartung der Hauptanwendung

Notizen zu diesem Zeitraum hinzufügen

Auftrags-ID (optional) Vertrags-ID (optional)
ORD-cd38-1 CON-cd38-1
z.B., ORDER-123 z.B., CONTRACT-9

Abrechnungsinformationen

Berichtszeitraum * Standard-Stundensatz *
Monatlich 125.0
Stundensatz eingeben (z.B., 100.00)

Abrechnen Zeitnachweis aktualisieren

Figure 121: Edit title, description, and hourly rate

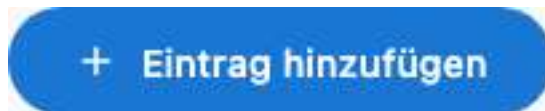
[i] Pro Tip: Changes to the hourly rate only affect new entries – existing entries keep their previous rate.

4.6 Record Time Entries

Time entries are the individual work hours you perform for a customer.

Add New Time Entry

1. Scroll to **Current Period**
2. Click **+ Add entry**
3. The input form opens



time entry

Figure 122: Button to add a new

Input Form

Work Date (required field) - Select the date when the work was performed
- Must be within the current period

← Zeitnachweis-Details

Zeitchweis-Informationen
Software-Entwicklung Projekt A
Thomas Bauer
Auftrags-ID
ORD-cd38-1
Vertrags-ID
CON-cd38-1

Gesamt abrechenbar
3016h 0min
Gesamt nicht abrechenbar
415h 30min

Gesamtbetrag
377.000,00 €
Monatlich

Zeiteinträge + Eintrag hinzufügen

Aktuelle Periode
01.12.2025 - 31.12.2025
15 Einträge 119:15 Stunden

Zeiteintrag hinzufügen

Arbeitsdatum *
z.B., 2,5 oder 2h30m oder 45m

⚠ Dauer muss größer als 0 sein

Aufgabenkategorie Abrechenbar Satz

Beschreibung

Figure 123: Select the work date via calendar

[!] **Important:** If you select a date outside the current period, an error message appears. Finalized periods can no longer be edited.

Start Time (optional) - Beginning time of work (e.g., 09:00) - Can be left empty if only duration is important

← Zeitrachweis-Details

Zeitrachweis-Informationen
Software-Entwicklung Projekt A
Thomas Bauer
Auftrags-ID
ORD-cd38-1
Vertrags-ID
CON-cd38-1

Gesamt abrechenbar
3016h 0min
Gesamt nicht abrechenbar
415h 30min

Gesamtbetrag
377.000,00 €
Monatlich

+ Eintrag hinzufügen

Aktuelle Periode
01.12.2025 - 31.12.2025
15 Einträge
119:15 Stunden

Zeitrachweis hinzufügen

Arbeitsdatum * 15.11.2025 Startzeit 09:00 Endzeit Dauer (Stunden) *
z.B., 2,5 oder 2h30m oder 45m

▲ Dauer muss größer als 0 sein

Aufgabenkategorie Abrechenbar Satz 125.00

Beschreibung

Figure 124: Optionally enter a start time

End Time (optional) - End time of work (e.g., 17:00) - If start and end time are provided, the application automatically calculates the duration

← Zeitrachweis-Details

Zeitrachweis-Informationen
Software-Entwicklung Projekt A
Thomas Bauer
Auftrags-ID
ORD-cd38-1
Vertrags-ID
CON-cd38-1

Gesamt abrechenbar
3016h 0min
Gesamt nicht abrechenbar
415h 30min

Gesamtbetrag
377.000,00 €
Monatlich

+ Eintrag hinzufügen

Aktuelle Periode
01.12.2025 - 31.12.2025
15 Einträge
119:15 Stunden

Zeitrachweis hinzufügen

Arbeitsdatum * 15.11.2025 Startzeit Endzeit 11:30 Dauer (Stunden) *
z.B., 2,5 oder 2h30m oder 45m

▲ Dauer muss größer als 0 sein

Aufgabenkategorie Abrechenbar Satz 125.00

Beschreibung

Figure 125: Optionally enter an end time

Duration (Hours) (required field) - Number of hours worked - Decimal numbers possible (e.g., 2.5 for 2.5 hours) - Automatically calculated if start and end time are provided

← Zeitrachweis-Details

Zeitrachweis-Informationen
Software-Entwicklung Projekt A
Thomas Bauer
Auftrags-ID
ORD-cd38-1
Vertrags-ID
CON-cd38-1

Gesamt abrechenbar
3016h 0min
Gesamt nicht abrechenbar
415h 30min

Gesamtbetrag
377.000,00 €
Monatlich

Zeiteinträge + Eintrag hinzufügen

Aktuelle Periode
01.12.2025 - 31.12.2025
15 Einträge 119:15 Stunden

Zeiteintrag hinzufügen

Arbeitsdatum * 15.11.2025 Startzeit Endzeit Dauer (Stunden) * 2,5
z.B., 2,5 oder 2h30m oder 45m

Aufgabenkategorie Abrechenbar Satz 125.00

Beschreibung
Woran hast du gearbeitet?

Figure 126: Enter duration in hours or have it calculated

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use start and end time to have duration calculated automatically – saves time and avoids calculation errors.

Description (required field) - What did you do? - This description will appear on the invoice later

← Zeitrachweis-Details

The screenshot shows the 'Zeitrachweis-Details' page for 'Software-Entwicklung Projekt A'. It includes a header with project details, a summary section with statistics, and a form to add a new time entry.

Zeitrachweis-Informationen
Software-Entwicklung Projekt A
Thomas Bauer
Auftrags-ID: ORD-cd38-1
Vertrags-ID: CON-cd38-1

Gesamt abrechenbar
3016h 0min
Gesamt nicht abrechenbar
415h 30min

Gesamtbetrag
377.000,00 €
Monatlich

Zeiteinträge + Eintrag hinzufügen

Aktuelle Periode
01.12.2025 - 31.12.2025
15 Einträge 119:15 Stunden

Zeiteintrag hinzufügen

Arbeitsdatum * 15.11.2025 Startzeit Endzeit Dauer (Stunden) *
z.B., 2,5 oder 2h30m oder 45m

▲ Dauer muss größer als 0 sein

Aufgabenkategorie Abrechenbar Satz 125.00

Beschreibung
API-Integration und Tests

Woran hast du gearbeitet?

Figure 127: Describe the work performed

[i] Pro Tip: Write customer-friendly descriptions like “Development of login feature” instead of “Programming” – this makes invoice review easier for the customer.

Task Category (optional) - Select a category from the dropdown list (e.g., “Development”, “Consulting”, “Support”) - Categories can be managed in settings (currently not implemented)

The screenshot shows the 'Aufgabenkategorie' dropdown menu with the following options:

- Entwicklung
- Meeting
- Support

Figure 128: Optionally select a task category

Billable - Checkbox: Should this entry appear on the invoice? - Default:

Enabled - Disable this option for internal work that should not be billed (e.g., administrative tasks)

← Zeitnachweis-Details

The screenshot displays the 'Zeitnachweis-Details' page for 'Software-Entwicklung Projekt A'. At the top, it lists project information: 'Software-Entwicklung Projekt A' by Thomas Bauer, with contract IDs ORD-cd38-1 and CON-cd38-1. Summary statistics show 3016h 0min billable and 415h 30min non-billable, totaling 377.000,00 € monthly. Below this is a section for 'Zeiteinträge' with a '+ Eintrag hinzufügen' button. The 'Aktuelle Periode' is 01.12.2025 - 31.12.2025, with 15 entries and 119:15 hours. The 'Zeiteintrag hinzufügen' form includes fields for 'Arbeitsdatum' (15.11.2025), 'Startzeit', 'Endzeit', and 'Dauer (Stunden)' (with examples like 2,5 or 2h30m or 45m). There is a warning 'Dauer muss größer als 0 sein'. Other fields include 'Aufgabenkategorie', 'Abrechenbar' (checkbox), 'Satz' (125.00), and 'Beschreibung'.

Figure 129: Mark whether this entry should be billed

[i] Pro Tip: Use non-billable entries for internal administrative work or to track all working hours, even if not everything is billed.

Hourly Rate Override (optional) - Override the default hourly rate for this specific entry - Useful for overtime, special activities, or discounts

← Zeitrachweis-Details

Zeitrachweis-Informationen
Software-Entwicklung Projekt A
Thomas Bauer
Auftrags-ID
ORD-cd38-1
Vertrags-ID
CON-cd38-1

Gesamt abrechenbar
3016h 0min
Gesamt nicht abrechenbar
415h 30min

Gesamtbetrag
377.000,00 €
Monatlich

+ Eintrag hinzufügen

Aktuelle Periode
01.12.2025 - 31.12.2025
15 Einträge
119:15 Stunden

Zeitrachweis hinzufügen

Arbeitsdatum *
15.11.2025 Startzeit Endzeit Dauer (Stunden) *
z.B., 2,5 oder 2h30m oder 45m

▲ Dauer muss größer als 0 sein

Aufgabenkategorie Abrechenbar Satz 145

Beschreibung

Figure 130: Optionally set a different hourly rate

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use a higher hourly rate for emergency support or weekend work.

Save Entry

Click **Add entry** to save the entry. The entry appears in the current period list.

← Zeitrachweis-Details

Zeitrachweis-Informationen
Software-Entwicklung Projekt A
Thomas Bauer
Auftrags-ID
ORD-cd38-1
Vertrags-ID
CON-cd38-1

Gesamt abrechenbar
3016h 0min
Gesamt nicht abrechenbar
415h 30min

Gesamtbetrag
377.000,00 €
Monatlich

Zeiteinträge + Eintrag hinzufügen

Aktuelle Periode
01.12.2025 - 31.12.2025
15 Einträge 119:15 Stunden

Zeiteintrag hinzufügen

Arbeitsdatum *
15.11.2025 Startzeit Endzeit Dauer (Stunden) *
z.B., 2,5 oder 2h30m oder 45m

▲ Dauer muss größer als 0 sein

Aufgabenkategorie Abrechenbar Satz 125.00

Beschreibung

Figure 131: Save the entry with the add button

4.7 Manage Time Entries

Display Entries

The detail view shows all entries of the **current period** in a list with:

- **Date:** Work date
- **Description:** What was done
- **Duration:** Number of hours
- **Amount:** Calculated from duration × hourly rate
- **Billable status:** Badge “Billable” or “Not billable”

← Zeitrachweis-Details

Zeitrachweis-Informationen
Software-Entwicklung Projekt A
Thomas Bauer
Auftrags-ID
ORD-cd38-1
Vertrags-ID
CON-cd38-1

Gesamt abrechenbar
3016h 0min
Gesamt nicht abrechenbar
415h 30min

Gesamtbetrag
377.000,00 €
Monatlich

Zeiteinträge + Eintrag hinzufügen

/

Figure 132: List of all time entries in the current period

Edit Entry

1. Click the **pencil icon** to the right of the entry
2. The edit form opens with all pre-filled values
3. Change the desired fields
4. Click **Save changes**

Zeiteintrag bearbeiten

Arbeitsdatum * 26.11.2025 Startzeit 08:00 Endzeit 17:45 Dauer (Stunden) * 9,75
z.B., 2,5 oder 2h30m oder 45m

Aufgabenkategorie Entwicklung Abrechenbar Satz 125.00

Beschreibung
API-Integration und Tests
Woran hast du gearbeitet?

Abbrechen Eintrag speichern

Figure 133: Edit an existing time entry

[!] **Important:** Finalized entries (from billed periods) can no longer be edited.

Delete Entry

1. Click the **trash icon** to the right of the entry
2. A confirmation dialog appears
3. Confirm with **Delete**

Eintrag löschen

Möchtest du diesen Zeiteintrag wirklich löschen?

Abbrechen Löschen

Figure 134: Confirmation dialog when deleting an entry

[!] **Important:** Deleted entries cannot be recovered.

4.8 Periods Overview

The detail view shows two areas:

1. **Current Period:** All open time entries that have not yet been billed

2. Past Periods: Finalized (billed) time periods

Current Period

The current period shows:

- **Time period:** Start and end date (automatically calculated based on reporting period)
- **Number of entries:** How many time entries are recorded
- **Total hours:** Sum of all hours
- **Billable hours:** Sum of billable hours
- **Total amount:** Calculated from billable hours × hourly rate



Figure 135: The current period with summary

[i] **Pro Tip:** The period ends automatically based on your reporting period (e.g., every Sunday for weekly billing).

Past Periods

Past periods are **automatically displayed** once you’ve finalized a period (by creating an invoice). They show the same information as the current period but are read-only.

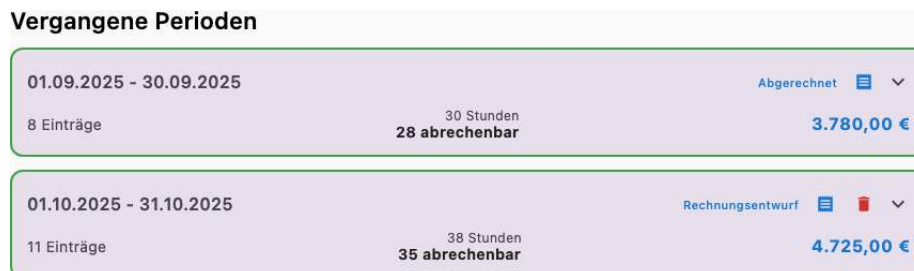


Figure 136: List of finalized periods with green border

Each finalized period shows:

- **Invoice status:** “Billed” (green badge) or “Draft invoice” (blue badge)
- **Show invoice button:** Opens the linked invoice
- **Delete period button:** Only visible if the invoice is still a draft (see section “Delete Period”)



Figure 137: Finalized period shows the linked invoice

4.9 Create Invoice from Period

The heart of time tracking: Create an invoice from your recorded hours with one click.

Prerequisites

You can create an invoice from the current period if: - [+] At least one billable entry exists - [+] The period contains hours with amount > 0

Create Invoice

1. Click **Create invoice** (receipt icon) in the header area of the current period
2. A confirmation dialog opens



Figure 138: “Create invoice” button for the current period

Confirmation Dialog

The dialog shows:

- **Title:** “Create invoice from period”
- **Time period:** Start and end date of the period
- **Note:** Explanation that the period will be finalized and a draft invoice created
- **Warning** (only for custom reporting period): You can adjust the end date

Rechnung aus Zeitraum erstellen

Du bist dabei, eine Rechnung aus diesem Zeitraum zu erstellen. Dies wird den Zeitraum finalisieren und eine Entwurfsrechnung erstellen.

⚠ Nach Finalisierung dieses Abrechnungszeitraums können Einträge nur noch zum nächsten Zeitraum hinzugefügt werden.

Startdatum
01.11.2025

Enddatum
30.11.2025

Abbrechen **Rechnung erstellen**

Figure 139: Dialog to confirm invoice creation

Adjust End Date (only for custom reporting period) If your timesheet is set to **Custom**, you can adjust the **end date** in the dialog:

- Default: Date of the last time entry
- You can choose an earlier or later date
- Only entries up to this date will be included in the invoice

Rechnung aus Zeitraum erstellen

Du bist dabei, eine Rechnung aus diesem Zeitraum zu erstellen. Dies wird den Zeitraum finalisieren und eine Entwurfsrechnung erstellen.

Startdatum
01.11.2025

Enddatum
21.11.2025

Abbrechen **Rechnung erstellen**

Figure 140: Adjusting end date for custom reporting period

[i] **Pro Tip:** For monthly, weekly, or bi-weekly billing, the end date is read-only and automatically calculated.

3. Click **Create invoice** to confirm

What Happens in the Background?

The application automatically performs the following steps:

1. **Finalize period:** The current period is closed and marked as “past period”
2. **Create invoice:** A new invoice with status **Draft** is created with:
 - One entry per time entry
 - Description: Date + description of entry (e.g., “01.03.2025: Development of login feature”)
 - Quantity: Number of hours (e.g., 2.5)
 - Unit price: Hourly rate of entry
 - VAT: Customer’s default VAT rate
3. **Link entries:** All time entries are linked to the invoice (finalized)
4. **Start new period:** A new current period is automatically created (start date = day after end date of finalized period)
5. **Navigation:** You are automatically redirected to the newly created invoice

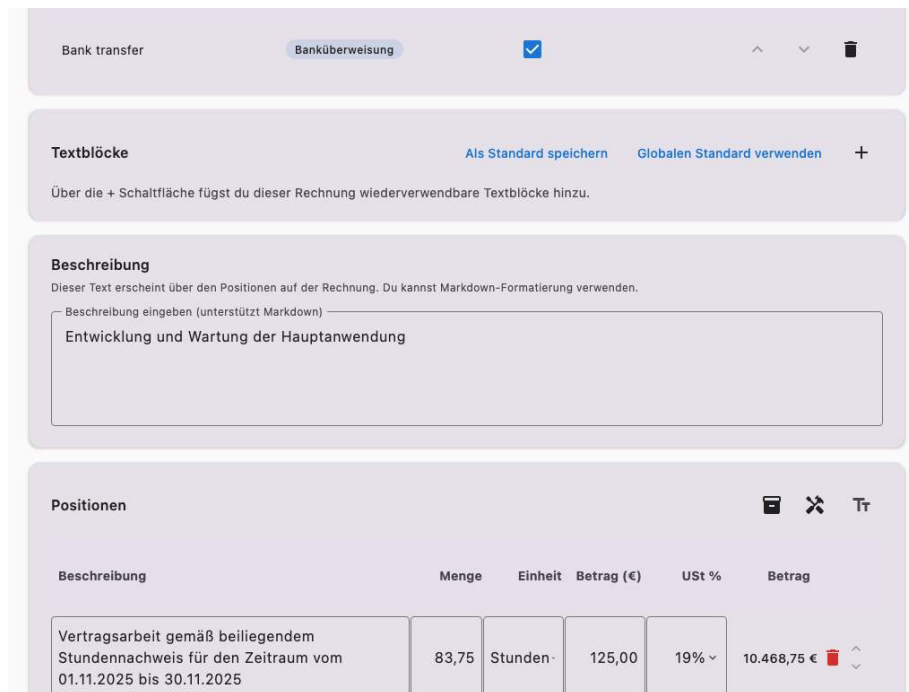


Figure 141: The created invoice with all time entries as line items

[i] Pro Tip: The invoice is initially a **draft** – you can still edit it (e.g., add text snippets, adjust line items) before publishing.

4.10 Edit and Publish Invoice

Edit Invoice

After creation, you can edit the invoice like any other invoice:

- **Line items:** Adjust descriptions, add line items, or remove some
- **Text snippets:** Add introductions or closing formulas
- **Date:** Change invoice date or payment term

Figure 142: Edit the invoice created from time entries

[i] Pro Tip: Add a text snippet like “Hourly billing according to time tracking” to increase transparency for the customer.

Publish Invoice

When the invoice is ready:

1. Click **Publish** in the “Next Steps” section
2. Confirm the dialog
3. The invoice becomes **immutable** (Status: Published)
4. The finalized period in time tracking is marked green (Status: “Billed”)

Figure 143: Published invoice marks period as “Billed”

Return to Time Tracking

Click **Back** or navigate via the sidebar to **Timesheets** to return to time tracking. You now see:

- The finalized period in the “Past Periods” area with green border
- **Show invoice** button to open the linked invoice
- A new **current period** for the next time entries

← Zeitnachweis-Details

The screenshot displays the 'Zeitnachweis-Details' for 'Software-Entwicklung Projekt A'. At the top, it shows project information including the name, contact person (Thomas Bauer), and various IDs. Summary statistics indicate a total of 3016h 0min billable and 415h 30min non-billable, with a total amount of 377,000.00 €. The billing frequency is set to 'Monatlich'. Below this, the 'Zeiteinträge' section shows the 'Aktuelle Periode' (01.01.2026 - 31.01.2026) with 19 entries and 148:30 hours. The 'Vergangene Perioden' section lists three past periods: 01.12.2025 - 31.12.2025 (15 entries, 119:15 hours, 14,906.25 €), 01.11.2025 - 30.11.2025 (14 entries, 107:30 hours, 10,468.75 €), and 01.10.2025 - 31.10.2025 (13 entries, 174:45 hours, 17,562.50 €). The 01.11.2025 - 30.11.2025 period is highlighted with a green border and labeled as 'abgerechnet' (settled).

Figure 144: Time tracking shows the finalized period and a new current period

4.11 Delete Period (Drafts Only)

If you accidentally finalized a period or don't want to create the invoice after all, you can delete the period – but **only** as long as the invoice is still a draft.

Prerequisites

You can delete a period if: - [+] The linked invoice is still in **Draft** status - ✕ Published invoices cannot be deleted (GoBD compliance)

Delete Period

1. Open the time tracking detail view
2. Scroll to past periods
3. Click **Delete period** (trash icon) for the desired period
4. A confirmation dialog appears:

Delete period and invoice?

“This will delete the draft invoice and unlink all time entries from this period. This action cannot be undone.”

- **Delete:** Confirm (red button)
- **Cancel:** Abort operation

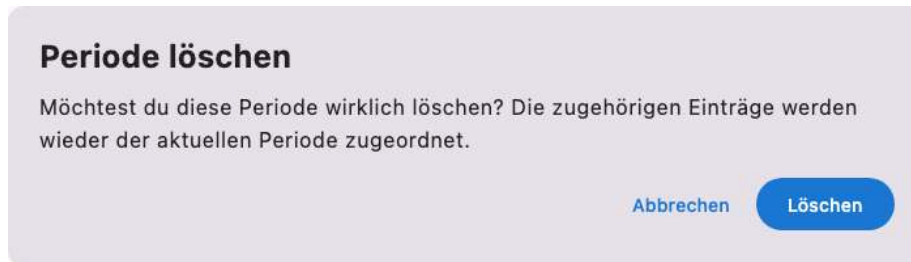


Figure 145: Confirmation dialog when deleting a period

5. Confirm with **Delete**

What Happens When Deleting?

- The linked draft invoice is deleted
- All time entries of this period are **unfinalized** and moved back to the current period
- The period itself is removed



Figure 146: Entries are back in the current period after deletion

[i] Pro Tip: Use this function to undo accidentally created invoices – but only as long as they’re still drafts.

4.12 Archive Timesheet (Set Inactive)

When a project is completed or you want to create a new timesheet for the same customer, you can archive the old timesheet.

Manually Set Inactive

(Currently not implemented – timesheets automatically become inactive when a new timesheet is created for the same customer)

Automatically Inactive Through New Timesheet

When you create a new timesheet for a customer who already has an active timesheet:

1. Warning appears: “Active timesheet exists”
2. If you proceed:
 - The old timesheet becomes **inactive**
 - All non-finalized entries are moved to the new timesheet
 - Finalized periods remain with the old timesheet

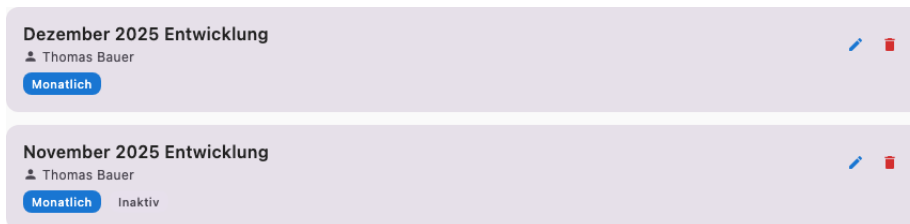


Figure 147: Old timesheet becomes inactive when a new one is created

Display Inactive Timesheets

Inactive timesheets appear with a **gray badge** in the list. They are read-only and show only finalized periods.

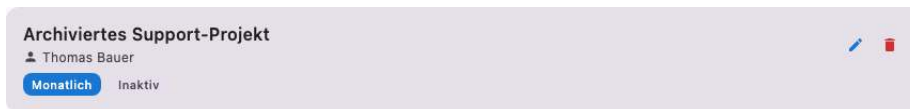


Figure 148: Inactive timesheet with gray badge

[i] **Pro Tip:** Inactive timesheets serve as an archive – you can always go back and view old invoices.

4.13 Practical Workflows

Workflow 1: Complete Workflow – Time Tracking to Invoice (15–30 minutes initial, then 5–10 minutes weekly)

Goal: Create a timesheet, record time entries over several weeks, and create monthly invoices from them.

Steps:

Initial Setup (15–30 minutes, one-time)

1. **Create timesheet** (5 minutes)

- Click + **Create new timesheet**
 - Title: “Consulting Customer XY - 2025”
 - Customer: Select Customer XY
 - Reporting period: **Weekly** (for regular billing)
 - Start date: Monday of current week
 - Default hourly rate: 120 EUR
 - Click **Create timesheet**
2. **Record first time entry** (2 minutes)
 - Click + **Add entry**
 - Work date: Today
 - Start time: 09:00
 - End time: 12:00
 - Description: “Kick-off meeting and project planning”
 - Billable: Enabled
 - Click **Add entry**

Weekly Routine (5–10 minutes per week)

3. **Record time entries** (daily 1–2 minutes)
 - Open the timesheet
 - Add all time entries daily or at the end of the week
 - Use concise, customer-friendly descriptions
4. **Create weekly invoice** (Friday or Monday, 3 minutes)
 - Open the timesheet
 - Check summary of current period (hours and amount)
 - Click **Create invoice**
 - Confirm the dialog
 - The invoice opens automatically
5. **Finalize invoice** (2 minutes)
 - Check all line items
 - Optionally add text snippets (e.g., “Weekly hourly billing”)
 - Click **Publish**
 - Confirm the dialog
6. **Export and send invoice** (2 minutes)
 - Click **Export**
 - Save PDF in archive directory
 - Send via email to customer

Monthly Closing (optional)

7. **Check all invoices of the month** (10 minutes)
 - Go to **Documents**
 - Filter for invoices of the current month
 - Check if all payments have been received
 - Record payments (see Chapter 3 “Documents”)

Result: You have an ongoing timesheet with weekly invoices automatically generated from your time entries. All hours are cleanly documented and billed.

[i] **Pro Tip:** Set up a weekly appointment in your calendar (e.g., Friday 4 PM) for “Complete time tracking and create invoice” – so you won’t forget.

Workflow 2: Project-Based Billing with Custom Period (10–15 minutes at completion)

Goal: Record time entries for a project over several weeks or months and bill at project end or after milestones.

Steps:

1. **Create timesheet with custom period** (3 minutes)
 - Title: “Project Alpha - MVP Development”
 - Customer: Select customer
 - Reporting period: **Custom**
 - Start date: Project start
 - End date: Leave empty (open-ended)
 - Default hourly rate: 150 EUR
2. **Record time entries continuously** (daily/weekly)
 - Record all hours worked
 - Use meaningful descriptions like “Feature X developed”, “Bug Y fixed”
3. **Intermediate billing at milestone** (5 minutes)
 - Click **Create invoice**
 - In dialog: Adjust **end date** to milestone (e.g., end of Sprint 1)
 - Confirm
 - Only entries up to this date are billed
4. **Finalize and send invoice** (5 minutes)
 - Add text snippet: “Billing Milestone 1 – MVP Sprint 1”
 - Publish and export invoice
5. **Continue next phase** (0 minutes)
 - The new current period automatically starts the day after the milestone end date
 - Continue recording time entries for the next milestones

Result: Flexible billing according to project progress or milestones, without rigid weekly or monthly rhythms.

[*] **Workflow Tip:** Use custom periods for projects with irregular billing (e.g., agency projects with partial payments after deliverables).

Workflow 3: Track Partially Non-Billable Hours (5 minutes daily)

Goal: Record all working hours, including internal activities, to have a complete overview – but only bill billable hours.

Steps:

1. **Create timesheet** (as usual)
 - Reporting period: **Monthly** (for monthly billing)
2. **Record billable entries** (daily)
 - Work for customer: **Billable** enabled
 - Example: “Consultation meeting with stakeholders” – 2 hours – Billable
3. **Record non-billable entries** (daily)
 - Internal activities: **Billable** disabled
 - Example: “Internal meeting for project planning” – 1 hour – Not billable
4. **Create monthly invoice** (end of month, 5 minutes)
 - Click **Create invoice**
 - Only billable entries appear on the invoice
 - Non-billable entries are documented but not billed
5. **Check overall overview** (optional)
 - Open the period
 - Summary shows:
 - **Total hours:** All hours (billable + non-billable)
 - **Billable hours:** Only billed hours
 - **Total amount:** Only from billable hours

Result: You have a complete overview of all hours worked but only bill actually billable work. Ideal for projects with mixed activities (e.g., consulting + internal administration).

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use task categories (if implemented) to group billable and non-billable activities for better analysis.

4.14 Pro Tips for Efficient Time Tracking

[>>] **Record times daily:** Don’t wait until the weekend – record your hours daily while they’re still fresh in your memory. This only takes 1–2 minutes per day.

[i] **Use start and end time:** Enter start and end time to have duration calculated automatically – this avoids calculation errors and is faster than manual calculation.

[*] **Customer-friendly descriptions:** Write descriptions so the customer understands what you did. “Development of login feature” is better than

“Programming”.

[!] **Track non-billable hours:** Also record internal activities as non-billable entries to have a complete overview of your working time.

[~] **Establish weekly or monthly routine:** Set up a fixed appointment in your calendar (e.g., “Friday 4 PM: Create invoice”) – so you won’t forget billing.

[i] **Hourly rate override for special activities:** Use a higher hourly rate for emergency support, weekend work, or overtime – this keeps billing transparent and fair.

[*] **Custom periods for projects:** If you bill project-based, use custom periods and adjust the end date at milestones – so you can bill flexibly according to progress.

[>] **Check summaries before invoice creation:** Before creating an invoice, check the current period summary (total hours, billable hours, total amount) – this avoids errors.

[i] **Text snippets for standard phrases:** Create text snippets like “Weekly hourly billing according to time tracking” and add them automatically to each invoice – saves time and creates consistency.

Continue with **Chapter 5: Tenant Management**

5. Tenant Management

Tenant Management allows you to manage multiple companies or business units in one application. Each tenant has its own company data, bank details, numbering schemes, and an optional logo. Ideal for self-employed individuals with multiple companies, tax advisors, or agencies billing for different businesses.



Figure 149: The tenant list shows all your companies

5.1 Tenant Concept

A **tenant** represents a company or business unit. Each tenant:

- Has **own company data**: Name, address, contact details
- Has **own bank details**: IBAN, BIC, bank name
- Has **own numbering schemes**: Separate counters for invoices, quotes, and reminders
- Can have its **own logo** for PDF documents
- Is completely **independent** from other tenants

Why Multiple Tenants?

Scenarios for Multi-Company Management:

1. **Self-employed with multiple companies**: Bill separately for sole proprietorship + GmbH
2. **Tax advisor**: Create invoices for different clients
3. **Agency with brands**: Different brands with their own company data
4. **Freelancer with side project**: Keep main activity + side activity separate



Figure 150: Each tenant has its own data and numbering schemes

[i] Pro Tip: Even if you only have one company, you must create at least one tenant – it will automatically be set as the default tenant.

5.2 Tenant List

The tenant list shows all your companies at a glance.

List Overview

Each entry shows:

- **Company name:** Name of the business
- **Address:** Street, postal code, and city in one line
- **Contact details:** Phone number (if available)
- **Invoice format:** Current numbering pattern and next invoice number
- **Default badge:** Yellow star for default tenant

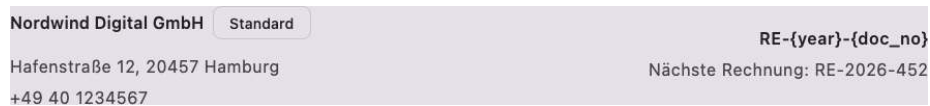


Figure 151: Each entry shows company data and invoice format

Default Tenant

The **default tenant** is automatically pre-selected when you: - Create a new document (invoice, quote) - Create a new timesheet - Start the application

The default tenant is marked with a **yellow star** [*].

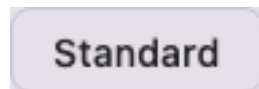


Figure 152: The default tenant is marked with a yellow star

[i] **Pro Tip:** Set the company you work with most frequently as the default tenant – this saves time.

5.3 Create Tenant

Create New Tenant

1. Click + **Create new tenant** in the header
2. The creation form opens



Figure 153: Button to create a new tenant

The form is divided into several sections: - Company information - Contact information - Bank information - Invoice settings - Quote and reminder settings - Logo

5.4 Company Information

Company Name (required field)

The name of your company as it should appear on invoices.

Examples: - Sole proprietorship: “John Doe – IT Consulting” - GmbH: “TechVision GmbH” - Freelancer: “Dr. Jane Smith – Legal Consulting”

A screenshot of a form field. The field is titled "Firmenname" in bold. Below the title is a text input box with a light gray border. Inside the box, the text "Nordwind Digital GmbH" is entered. The label "Firmenname" is also visible in a smaller font above the input box.

Figure 154: Enter the company name

[i] Pro Tip: Use the official company name as registered in the commercial register or on your business license.

Owner (optional)

Name of the owner or managing director (appears on invoices).

Examples: - “John Doe” - “Dr. Michael Johnson” - “Jane Smith, Managing Director”

A screenshot of a form field. The field is titled "Inhaber" in bold. Below the title is a text input box with a light gray border. Inside the box, the text "Mara Hoffmann" is entered. The label "Inhaber" is also visible in a smaller font above the input box.

Figure 155: Optionally enter the owner

Address (required fields)

Street (required field) - Street and house number - Example: “Main Street 123”

Straße

Straße

Hafenstraße 12

Figure 156: Enter street and house number

Address Supplement (optional) - Additional address information - Examples: “4th Floor”, “Rear Building”, “c/o Schmidt”

Adresszusatz

Adresszusatz

3. Etage

Figure 157: Optionally enter an address supplement

Postal Code (required field) - Postal code - Example: “10117”

PLZ

PLZ

20457

Figure 158: Enter the postal code

City (required field) - City name - Example: “Berlin”

Stadt

Stadt

Hamburg

Figure 159: Enter the city

State / Region (optional) - State or region (especially relevant for USA, Canada) - Examples: “Berlin”, “Bavaria”, “California”

Bundesland / Region

Bundesland / Region

Hamburg

Figure 160: Optionally enter the state

Country (required field) - Country as text - Examples: “Germany”, “Austria”, “Switzerland”, “United States”



The image shows a light purple rounded rectangular box. At the top left, the word "Land" is written in bold. Below it, there is a text input field with a light gray border. Inside the field, the word "Land" is written in a small font above a horizontal line, and the word "Deutschland" is written below the line.

Figure 161: Enter the country

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use consistent spellings – either always in German (“Deutschland”) or always in English (“Germany”) – this looks more professional on invoices.

Tax Information

Tax Number (required field) - Your tax number from the tax office - Format: Depends on the state (e.g., “27/123/45678” for Berlin)



The image shows a light purple rounded rectangular box. At the top left, the word "Steuernummer" is written in bold. Below it, there is a text input field with a light gray border. Inside the field, the word "Steuernummer" is written in a small font above a horizontal line, and the number "47/123/45678" is written below the line.

Figure 162: Enter your tax number

VAT ID (required field) - Value Added Tax Identification Number (for businesses) - Format: DE + 9 digits (e.g., “DE123456789”)



The image shows a light purple rounded rectangular box. At the top left, the text "USt-IdNr." is written in bold. Below it, there is a text input field with a light gray border. Inside the field, the text "USt-IdNr." is written in a small font above a horizontal line, and the alphanumeric string "DE123456789" is written below the line.

Figure 163: Enter your VAT ID

[!] **Important:** Both fields are required because they are legally mandated on German invoices. If you don’t have a VAT ID yet, apply for it at the Federal Central Tax Office.

[i] **Pro Tip:** The VAT ID is mandatory for intra-community business (EU).

Commercial Register (optional)

If your company is registered (e.g., GmbH), you can store register information for use in documents.

Typical fields: - Commercial register court - Commercial register number

Responsible Persons (optional)

Depending on your legal form you may want to store: - Managing directors
- Supervisory board chairman

5.5 Contact Information

General Email (required field)

Your general business email address (appears on invoices).

Examples: - “info@techvision-gmbh.com” - “contact@johndoe.com” - “jane.smith@legal-consulting.com”



The image shows a form field with the title "Allgemeine E-Mail". Below the title is a text input field containing the email address "hallo@nordwind-digital.de". The field is set against a light purple background.

Figure 164: Enter your business email address

Billing Email (optional)


Dedicated email address for invoices (recommended if different from the general email).

Examples: - “invoices@techvision-gmbh.com” - “accounting@johndoe.com”

Main Phone (required field)

Your business phone number (appears on invoices).

Examples: - “+49 30 12345678” (with country code) - “030 / 123 456 78” (without country code) - “0171 / 123 45 67” (mobile number)



The image shows a form field with the title "Haupttelefon". Below the title is a text input field containing the phone number "+49 40 1234567". The field is set against a light purple background.

Figure 165: Enter your phone number

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use a consistent format with country code (e.g., “+49 30 12345678”) – this looks professionally international.

Alternate Phone (optional)

Additional phone number (e.g., mobile or back office).

Fax (optional)

Fax number (if relevant for your business).

Website (optional)

Your company website (appears on invoices).

Examples: - “www.techvision-gmbh.com” - “https://johndoe.com” - “legal-consulting-smith.com”



The image shows a light purple rounded rectangular box containing a form field. The label 'Web-Adresse' is at the top left. Below it is a text input field with a light gray border and a small 'Web-Adresse' label on the left. The text 'www.nordwind-digital.de' is entered into the field.

Figure 166: Optionally enter your website

[i] **Pro Tip:** Enter the URL without “http://” or “https://” – this looks cleaner (e.g., “www.company.com” instead of “https://www.company.com”).

5.6 Bank Information

Bank details appear on your invoices so customers can transfer payment.

Bank Name (required field)

Name of your bank.

Examples: - “Deutsche Bank AG” - “Sparkasse Berlin” - “Bank of America”



The image shows a light purple rounded rectangular box containing a form field. The label 'Bankname' is at the top left. Below it is a text input field with a light gray border and a small 'Bankname' label on the left. The text 'ElbBank Hamburg' is entered into the field.

Figure 167: Enter your bank name

Account Holder (optional)

Name of the account holder (if different from company name).

Examples: - Leave empty if identical to company name - “John Doe” (for sole proprietorship) - “TechVision GmbH” (if explicitly desired)

A screenshot of a form field titled "Kontoinhaber". The field contains the text "Nordwind Digital GmbH". The label "Kontoinhaber" is positioned above the input box.

Figure 168: Optionally enter the account holder

[i] Pro Tip: Leave this field empty if the account holder is identical to the company name – this saves space on the invoice.

IBAN (required field)

Your International Bank Account Number.

Format: DE + 2 check digits + 18 digits (total 22 characters)

Example: DE89370400440532013000

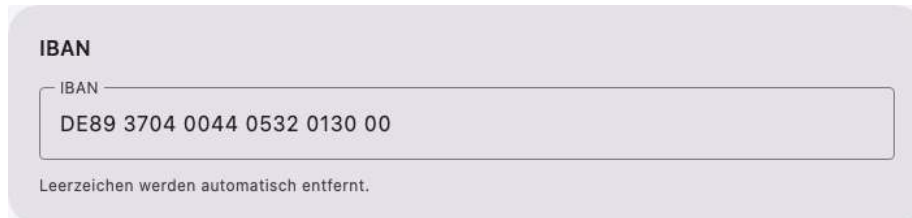
A screenshot of a form field titled "IBAN". The field contains the text "DE89 3704 0044 0532 0130 00". Below the input box, there is a small text label: "Leerzeichen werden automatisch entfernt." (Spaces are automatically removed).

Figure 169: Enter your IBAN

Validation: - The application automatically checks if the IBAN is valid - Format and checksum validation - Error message: “Please enter a valid IBAN”

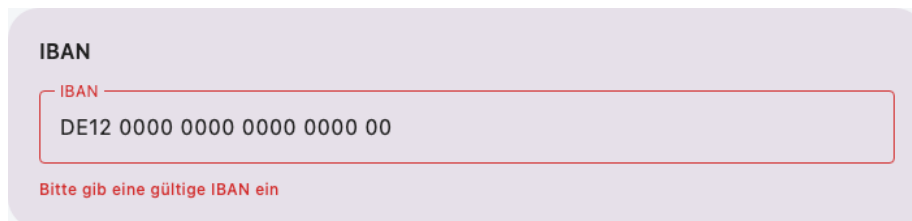
A screenshot of a form field titled "IBAN". The field contains the text "DE12 0000 0000 0000 0000 00". Below the input box, there is a red error message: "Bitte gib eine gültige IBAN ein" (Please enter a valid IBAN).

Figure 170: Error message for invalid IBAN

[i] Pro Tip: You can enter the IBAN with or without spaces – the application automatically removes spaces. Examples: “DE89 3704 0044 0532 0130 00” or “DE89370400440532013000”.

[!] **Important:** Check the IBAN carefully – errors prevent customers from making payments.

BIC/SWIFT (required field)

SEPA Creditor ID (optional)

If you use SEPA direct debits, you can store your SEPA creditor identifier here.

Bank Identifier Code (also called SWIFT code).

Format: 8 or 11 characters (letters and digits)

Example: DEUTDEDB110

A screenshot of a web form field labeled "BIC/SWIFT". The field contains the text "COBADEFFXXX". The field is outlined in a light grey border.

Figure 171: Enter your BIC/SWIFT code

Validation: - The application automatically checks if the BIC is valid - Format validation according to ISO 9362 - Error message: “Please enter a valid BIC/SWIFT”

A screenshot of a web form field labeled "BIC/SWIFT". The field contains the text "BIC12". The field is outlined in a red border. Below the field, there is a red error message: "Bitte gib eine gültige BIC/SWIFT ein".

Figure 172: Error message for invalid BIC

[i] **Pro Tip:** You can find the BIC on your bank statement, in online banking, or on your bank’s website.

5.7 Invoice Settings

Invoice settings determine how your invoice numbers look and which number will be assigned next.

Invoice Number Pattern (required field)

The pattern defines how invoice numbers are generated.

Default: INV-`{doc_no}`

Available Placeholders:

- **{doc_no}**: Sequential document number (1, 2, 3, ...)
- **{year}**: Current year (e.g., 2025)
- **{month}**: Current month (01–12)
- **{day}**: Current day (01–31)

Examples:

Pattern	Example Output	Use Case
INV- <code>{doc_no}</code>	INV-1, INV-2, INV-3	Simple sequential numbering
RE- <code>{year}</code> - <code>{doc_no}</code>	RE-2025-1, RE-2025-2	With year
<code>{year}</code> <code>{month}</code> <code>{day}</code> - <code>{doc_no}</code>	20251116-1	With complete date
INV- <code>{year}</code> - <code>{month}</code> - <code>{doc_no}</code>	INV-2025-11-1	With year and month



Figure 173: Enter the invoice number pattern

Tooltip Help:

Click the **info icon (i)** next to the field to see detailed help on placeholders.



Figure 174: Tooltip shows all available placeholders and examples

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use a pattern with year (`{year}`) to automatically start from the beginning each year and have clear numbers (e.g., RE-2025-1, RE-2026-1).

[!] **Important:** Don't change the pattern after the first invoices – this creates gaps in numbering.

Current Invoice Number (required field)

The next invoice number to be assigned.

Default: 1

When to change? - For new setup: Leave at 1 if you want to start at 1 -
When migrating from another system: Enter last invoice number + 1 (e.g., if your last invoice was “RE-2024-450”, enter “451”)

A screenshot of a software interface showing a text input field. The field is titled "Aktuelle Rechnungsnummer" in bold black text. Below the title, the text "Aktuelle Nummer" is displayed above a rounded rectangular input box. Inside the box, the number "451" is entered.

Figure 175: Enter the

next invoice number

Note text: “The next invoice will use this number + 1”

Preview:

Below the field you see a **preview** of the next invoice number based on your pattern and current number.

Example: - Pattern: RE-`{year}`-`{doc_no}` - Current number: 5 - Preview: “RE-2025-6”

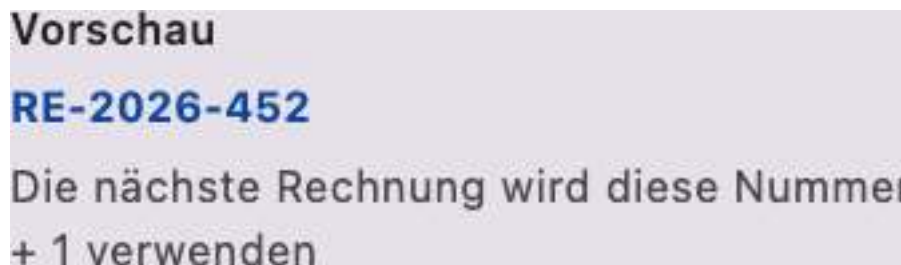
A screenshot of a software interface showing a preview section. The section is titled "Vorschau" in bold black text. Below the title, the text "RE-2026-452" is displayed in a large, bold, blue font. Below this, the text "Die nächste Rechnung wird diese Nummer + 1 verwenden" is displayed in a smaller, grey font.

Figure 176: Preview shows the next invoice number

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use the preview to test your pattern before saving.

5.8 Quote and Reminder Settings

Just like invoices, you can define your own patterns and numbering schemes for quotes and reminders.

Quote Number Pattern

Default: Q-`{doc_no}`

Examples: - ANG-`{doc_no}` → ANG-1, ANG-2, ANG-3 - Q-`{year}`-`{doc_no}` → Q-2025-1, Q-2025-2 - `{year}`-ANG-`{doc_no}` → 2025-ANG-1

Angebotsmuster



Angebotsmuster
ANG-`{year}`-`{doc_no}`

Figure 177: Enter the quote number pattern

Current Quote Number

The next quote number to be assigned.

Default: 1

Aktuelle Angebotsnummer



Aktuelle Nummer
82

Figure 178: Enter the next quote number

Reminder Number Pattern

Default: M-`{doc_no}`

Examples: - MAH-`{doc_no}` → MAH-1, MAH-2, MAH-3 - M-`{year}`-`{doc_no}` → M-2025-1, M-2025-2

Mahnungsmuster



Mahnungsmuster
MAH-`{year}`-`{doc_no}`

Figure 179: Enter the reminder number pattern

[i] **Pro Tip:** Reminder numbers automatically have an **escalation level** (e.g., -L1, -L2, -L3) added by the application. Example: MAH-2025-1-L1 (first reminder), MAH-2025-1-L2 (second reminder).

Current Reminder Number

The next reminder number to be assigned.

Default: 0 (because reminders are less common)

A screenshot of a web form. At the top, the text 'Aktuelle Mahnungsnummer' is displayed in a bold, dark font. Below this, there is a light gray rectangular input field with a thin border. Inside the field, the text 'Aktuelle Nummer' is written in a smaller, lighter font, and the number '14' is entered in a larger, dark font.

Figure 180: Enter the next reminder number

5.9 Upload Logo

Upload a company logo that appears in the top left of all PDF documents (invoices, quotes).

Select Logo

1. Click **Select logo**
2. A file selection dialog opens
3. Select an image file (PNG, JPG, GIF, SVG)
4. The logo is loaded into the form

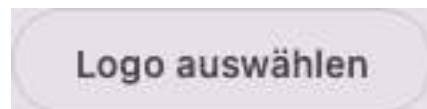


Figure 181: Button to upload a logo

Logo Preview

After uploading, you see a **preview** of the logo in the form.

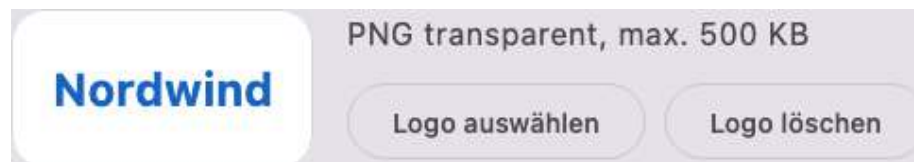


Figure 182: Preview of the uploaded logo

Delete Logo

Click **Delete logo** to remove the logo.

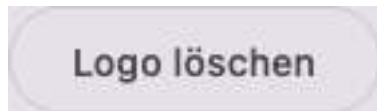


Figure 183: Button to delete the logo

Recommended Logo Formats

Recommendations: - **Format:** PNG with transparent background (looks most professional) - **Size:** Maximum 500 × 200 pixels (landscape format) - **File size:** Under 500 KB - **Color:** Color or black-and-white (depending on corporate design)

Examples of good logos: - Company name + icon in one line - Logo only without background - Lettering in company colors

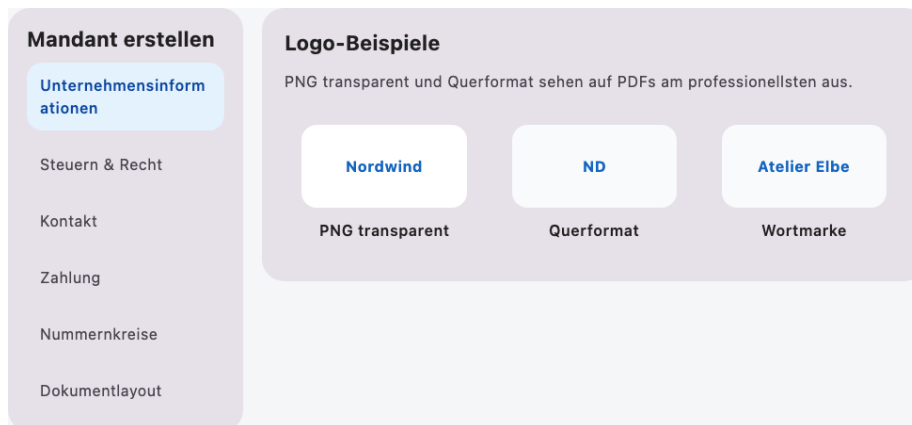


Figure 184: Examples of well-suited logos

[i] **Pro Tip:** A transparent background (PNG) looks more professional than a white background – especially on colored PDFs.

[!] **Important:** The logo is stored in the database – very large logos can cause performance issues. Keep file size under 500 KB.

5.10 Set as Default

The **default tenant** is automatically pre-selected when you create new documents or timesheets.

Set Default

Enable the checkbox **Set as default** to make this tenant the default tenant.

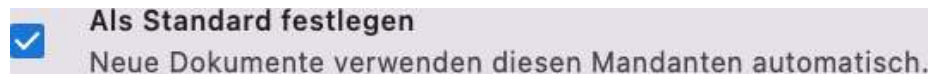


Figure 185: Checkbox to set as default tenant

What happens? - The previous default tenant loses default status - This tenant becomes the new default tenant - This tenant is pre-selected for all new documents

[i] **Pro Tip:** Set the company you work with most frequently as default – this saves time when creating documents.

5.11 Save Tenant

Save

Click **Create tenant** (or **Update tenant** when editing) to save the tenant.



Figure 186: Save the tenant with the create button

Validation:

The application checks before saving: - [+] Company name filled in - [+] Street, postal code, city, country filled in - [+] Tax number and VAT ID filled in - [+] IBAN valid (format and checksum) - [+] BIC valid (format according to ISO 9362) - [+] Invoice pattern valid (at least one placeholder)

Mandant erstellen

Unternehmensinformationen

Steuern & Recht

Kontakt

Zahlung

Nummernkreise

Dokumentlayout

Firmenname

Firmenname

Firmenname ist erforderlich

IBAN

IBAN

DE12 0000 0000 0000 0000 00

Bitte gib eine gültige IBAN ein

BIC/SWIFT

BIC/SWIFT

BIC12

BIC/SWIFT ist ungültig

Figure 187: Validation errors are marked in red

Go Back Without Saving

Click the **back arrow** in the upper left corner to return to the previous screen. If you have unsaved changes, a dialog appears:

Unsaved Changes

“You have unsaved changes. Do you really want to continue?”

- **Discard:** Changes will not be saved
- **Cancel:** Stay in the form

Ungespeicherte Änderungen

Du hast ungespeicherte Änderungen. Möchtest du wirklich fortfahren?

Abbrechen Verwerfen

Figure 188: Warning for unsaved changes

5.12 Edit Tenant

Open Tenant

Click on a tenant in the list to open it. The edit form shows all saved data.

Figure 189: Click on a tenant to edit it

Edit Fields

You can edit all fields, **except**: - Company name (can be changed, but carefully – appears on all new documents) - Current invoice number (editable only for a new number pattern that has not been used yet; existing patterns with published documents are locked)

[!] **Important:** Changes only affect **new** documents – already published documents keep their saved data (GoBD compliance).

Change Number Pattern

You can change the number pattern, but: - [!] Already created documents keep their old pattern - [!] New documents use the new pattern - [!] This can lead to inconsistent numbers

If you switch to a **completely new** number pattern (no documents created for it yet), you can set the **current number** freely (e.g., back to 0) to define the start value.

Recommendation: Only change the pattern at the beginning of the year or during fundamental restructuring.

[i] **Pro Tip:** If you need to change the pattern, also increase the current number to avoid overlaps.

5.13 Delete Tenant

Prerequisites

You can delete a tenant if: - [+] No published documents exist (invoices, quotes, reminders) - [+] It's not the only tenant (at least one tenant must remain)

[!] **Important:** Deletion is **permanent** and cannot be undone.

Perform Deletion

1. Click the **three-dot menu** to the right of the tenant in the list
2. Select **Delete**
3. A confirmation dialog appears:

Delete tenant?

“Do you really want to delete ‘TechVision GmbH’? This action cannot be undone.”

- **Delete:** Confirm (red button)
- **Cancel:** Abort operation

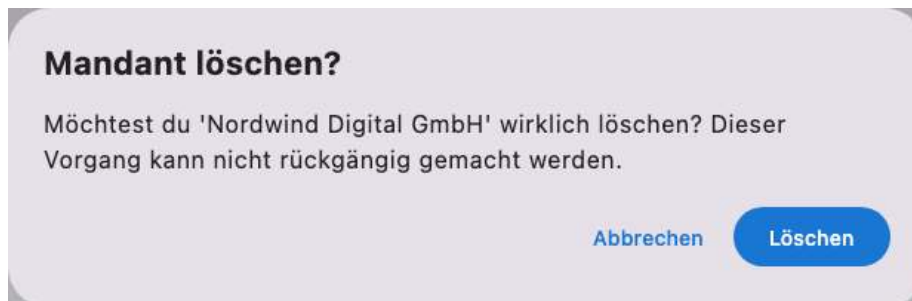


Figure 190: Confirmation dialog when deleting a tenant

4. Confirm with **Delete**

What Gets Deleted?

- All company data
- All bank details
- The logo
- All associated **drafts** (non-published documents)

What Remains?

- Published documents remain (GoBD compliance)
- Customers remain (not assigned to any tenant)

[i] **Pro Tip:** If you want to “archive” a tenant without deleting it, simply create a new tenant and set it as default. The old tenant remains in the list but is no longer actively used.

5.14 Switch Tenant

Quick Tenant Switch in Menu Bar

In the top menu bar you see the **currently selected tenant** as a dropdown menu.

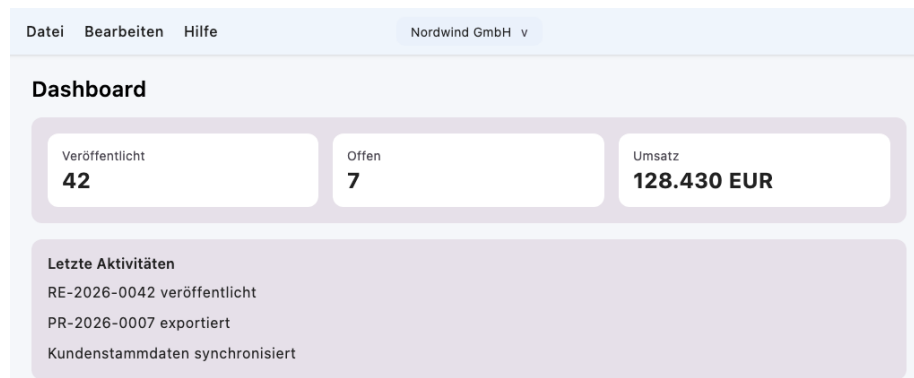


Figure 191: Tenant dropdown in the top menu bar

Switch tenant: 1. Click on the company name in the menu bar 2. A dropdown menu shows all tenants 3. Select another tenant 4. The application loads all data for the new tenant



Figure 192: Dropdown menu shows all available tenants

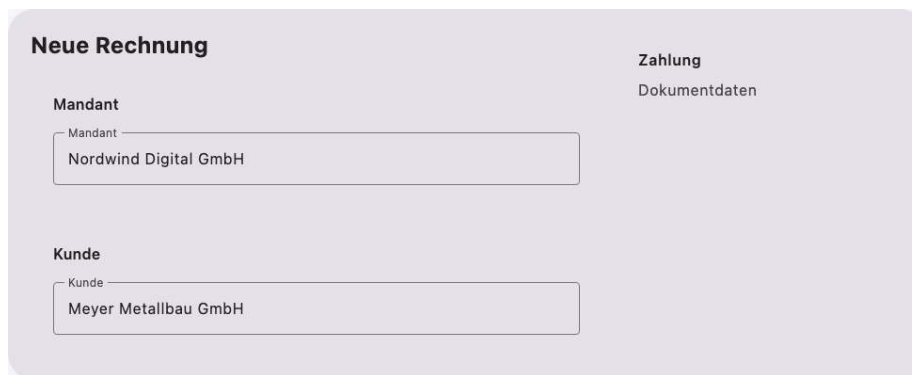
What changes when switching? - Dashboard shows only documents of the selected tenant - Document list shows only documents of the selected tenant - Timesheets show only timesheets of the selected tenant - New documents are automatically created with the selected tenant

[i] **Pro Tip:** The default tenant is marked with a **yellow star** [*] – so you can find it faster.

Select Tenant When Creating Documents

When creating an invoice or quote, you can change the tenant in the form:

1. Open the creation form for an invoice
2. Select another tenant in the **Tenant** field
3. The invoice will be created for the selected tenant



The screenshot shows a SAP form titled "Neue Rechnung" (New Invoice) with the sub-header "Zahlung Dokumentdaten". The form contains two main sections: "Mandant" (Mandant) and "Kunde" (Kunde). The "Mandant" field is a dropdown menu with "Nordwind Digital GmbH" selected. The "Kunde" field is a dropdown menu with "Meyer Metallbau GmbH" selected.

Figure 193: Tenant selection when creating an invoice

[!] **Important:** The tenant cannot be changed after the first save because the document number belongs to the tenant.

5.15 Understanding Numbering Schemes

Each tenant has **own numbering schemes** for: - Invoices - Quotes - Reminders

Why Separate Numbering Schemes?

Reason 1: Legal Separation - Each company must have gap-free, sequential invoice numbers (GoBD) - Different companies cannot use the same numbers

Reason 2: Clarity - Customers immediately see which company the invoice is from - Example: "RE-2025-1" (TechVision GmbH) vs. "BW-2025-1" (Consulting Works GmbH)

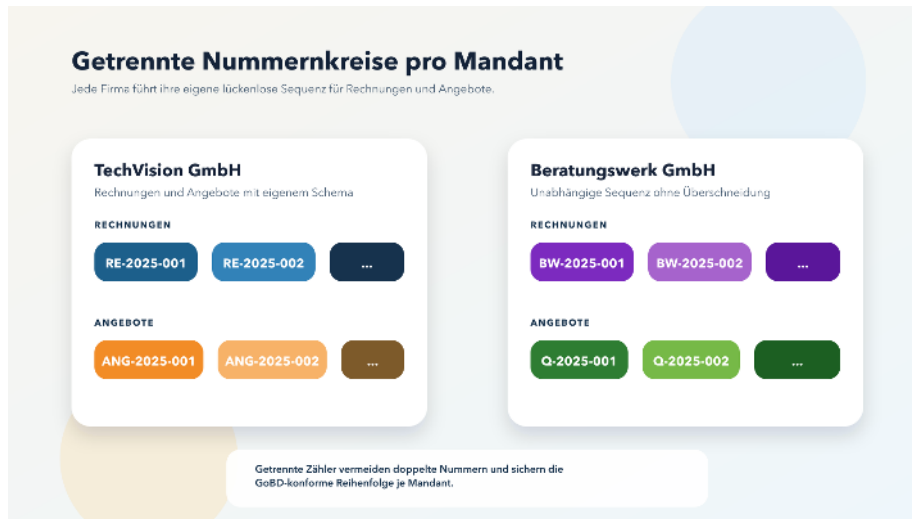


Figure 194: Each tenant has its own numbering schemes

Number Example

Tenant 1: TechVision GmbH - Invoices: RE-2025-1, RE-2025-2, RE-2025-3, ... - Quotes: ANG-2025-1, ANG-2025-2, ANG-2025-3, ...

Tenant 2: Consulting Works GmbH - Invoices: BW-2025-1, BW-2025-2, BW-2025-3, ... - Quotes: Q-2025-1, Q-2025-2, Q-2025-3, ...

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use different prefixes (e.g., “RE” vs. “BW”) to easily distinguish tenants.

5.16 Practical Workflows

Workflow 1: Create First Company (10–15 minutes, one-time)

Goal: Create your first tenant with all necessary data.

Steps:

1. **Create tenant** (2 minutes)
 - Click + **Create new tenant**
 - Company name: “John Doe – IT Consulting”
 - Owner: “John Doe”
2. **Enter address** (1 minute)
 - Street: “Sample Street 123”
 - Postal code: “10117”
 - City: “Berlin”
 - Country: “Germany”

3. **Enter tax information** (1 minute)
 - Tax number: Copy from tax office notice
 - VAT ID: Copy from notice if available (otherwise apply at Federal Central Tax Office)
4. **Enter contact details** (1 minute)
 - Email: “contact@johndoe.com”
 - Phone: “+49 30 12345678”
 - Website: “www.johndoe.com”
5. **Enter bank details** (3 minutes)
 - Bank name: “Sparkasse Berlin”
 - IBAN: Copy from bank statement or online banking
 - BIC: Copy from bank statement or online banking
 - Account holder: Leave empty (identical to company name)
6. **Invoice settings** (2 minutes)
 - Invoice pattern: RE-`{year}`-`{doc_no}` (Example: RE-2025-1)
 - Current number: 1 (if starting at 1)
 - Check preview: “RE-2025-1”
7. **Upload logo** (2 minutes, optional)
 - Click **Select logo**
 - Select your company logo (PNG with transparent background)
 - Check preview
8. **Set as default** (10 seconds)
 - Enable **Set as default**
9. **Save** (10 seconds)
 - Click **Create tenant**
 - Success message appears
 - You land in the tenant list

Result: Your first tenant is created and set as default. You can now create invoices and quotes.

[i] **Pro Tip:** Have your tax notice, bank statement, and logo ready before starting – this saves time.

Workflow 2: Add Second Company (5–10 minutes)

Goal: Add a second company (e.g., GmbH alongside sole proprietorship).

Steps:

1. **Create tenant** (2 minutes)
 - Click + **Create new tenant**
 - Company name: “TechVision GmbH”
 - Owner: “Dr. Michael Johnson, Managing Director”
2. **Enter address** (1 minute)
 - GmbH address (can be identical to first company)

3. **Enter tax information** (1 minute)
 - **Different** tax number (GmbH has its own tax number)
 - **Different** VAT ID (GmbH has its own VAT ID)
4. **Enter contact details** (1 minute)
 - Can be identical to first company or different email/phone
5. **Enter bank details** (2 minutes)
 - **Different** IBAN (GmbH has its own bank account)
 - **Different** BIC
6. **Invoice settings** (2 minutes)
 - Invoice pattern: TG-`{year}`-`{doc_no}` (Example: TG-2025-1)
 - **Important:** Use a **different prefix** than the first company (e.g., “TG” instead of “RE”)
 - Current number: 1 (new numbering scheme)
7. **Upload logo** (optional)
 - If the GmbH has a different logo, upload it
8. **Set default** (optional)
 - If you mainly work with the GmbH, enable **Set as default**
 - Otherwise leave disabled
9. **Save** (10 seconds)
 - Click **Create tenant**

Result: Second company is created with its own numbering schemes. You can now switch between both companies.

[*] **Workflow Tip:** Use unique prefixes in invoice patterns (e.g., “RE” for sole proprietorship, “TG” for GmbH) to easily assign documents.

Workflow 3: Switch Tenant and Create Invoice (1–2 minutes)

Goal: Switch between tenants and create an invoice for a specific company.

Steps:

1. **Switch tenant** (10 seconds)
 - Click on the company name in the top menu bar
 - Select “TechVision GmbH” from the dropdown
2. **Check dashboard** (5 seconds)
 - Dashboard shows only documents from TechVision GmbH
 - Tenant name is visible in the menu bar
3. **Create invoice** (30 seconds)
 - Click + **Create New** → **New Invoice**
 - Tenant is automatically set to “TechVision GmbH”
 - Select customer, add line items
 - Save
4. **Check invoice number** (5 seconds)

- Invoice number follows TechVision GmbH pattern (e.g., “TG-2025-1”)

Result: Invoice was created for the correct tenant with correct company details and numbering scheme.

[i] Pro Tip: Always check the tenant in the menu bar before creating a document – this prevents creating invoices for the wrong company.

5.17 Pro Tips for Tenant Management

[>] Use default tenant smartly: Set the company you work with most frequently as default – this saves you a click for every document.

[i] Use unique prefixes: Use different prefixes in invoice patterns (e.g., “RE” for Company A, “BW” for Company B) to easily assign documents.

[*] Number pattern with year: Use `{year}` in the pattern (e.g., `RE-{year}-{doc_no}`) to automatically start from the beginning each year and have clear numbers.

[!] Check IBAN and BIC carefully: Check IBAN and BIC multiple times – errors prevent customers from making payments.

[~] Logo with transparent background: Use PNG logos with transparent background – this looks more professional on PDFs than white backgrounds.

[i] Optimize logo size: Keep logos under 500 KB to avoid overloading the database. Use online tools like TinyPNG for compression.

[*] Don’t delete tenants prematurely: Only delete tenants if you’re sure you’ll never need them again – published documents remain, but all drafts are deleted.

[>] Don’t change number pattern: Only change the number pattern at the beginning of the year or during fundamental restructuring – otherwise inconsistent numbering occurs.

[i] Omit account holder: If the account holder is identical to the company name, leave the field empty – this saves space on the invoice.

[*] Use tenant dropdown in menu bar: Use the tenant dropdown in the top menu bar for quick switches between companies – faster than via the sidebar.

5.18 Payment Profiles

What Is a Payment Profile?

A **payment profile** contains one set of payment details for a tenant – for example, a bank account (IBAN/BIC) or a PayPal link. Each tenant can have **multiple payment profiles**, making it easy to offer customers a choice of payment methods on the same invoice.

Examples: - Profile 1: Bank transfer (IBAN/BIC) - Profile 2: PayPal (payment link) - Profile 3: Stripe (payment link)

Create and Manage Payment Profiles

1. Open the tenant you want to add a profile to
2. Scroll to the **Payment Profiles** section
3. Click + **Add payment profile**
4. Fill in the profile details

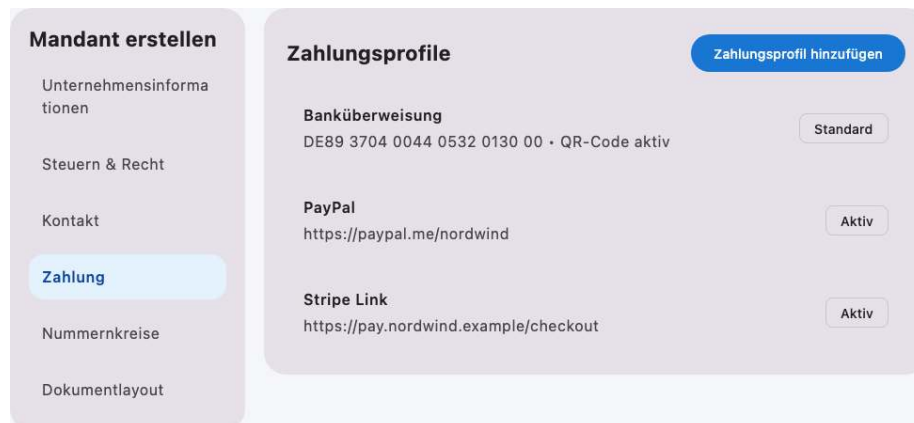


Figure XX: The payment profiles section in the tenant editor

Fields per Payment Profile

Field	Description
Name	Label shown in the profile selector (e.g., “Bank Transfer”, “PayPal”)
Type	Bank transfer or payment link
IBAN (bank transfer)	International Bank Account Number
BIC (bank transfer)	Bank Identifier Code
Bank name	Optional: displayed on invoice
Account holder	Optional: if different from company name
Payment URL (payment link)	URL customers open to pay (e.g., PayPal.me link)

Field	Description
QR code	Auto-generated based on profile data (preview shown inline)

Select Which Profile Appears on a Document

When creating or editing a document, you can choose which payment profile to use:

1. In the document editor, find the **Payment** section on the right-hand side
2. Select the desired profile from the **Payment profile** dropdown
3. The selected profile (including its QR code if one is configured) will appear on the exported PDF

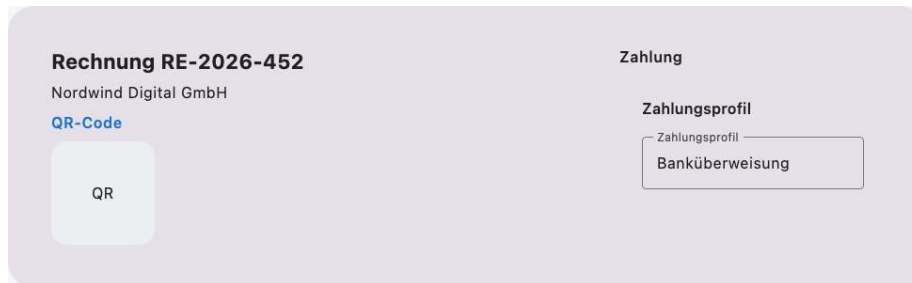


Figure XX: Selecting a payment profile in the document editor

QR Codes on Invoices

For payment profiles with bank transfer details, AGYNAMIX Invoicer can generate a **QR code** using the EPC (European Payments Council) standard. Customers can scan this QR code with their banking app to fill in the payment details automatically.

What the QR code encodes: - Recipient name (tenant) - IBAN - BIC - Payment amount - Invoice number as reference

Useful for: - Customers who use mobile banking apps (common in Germany, Austria, Switzerland) - Reducing input errors in payment reference fields

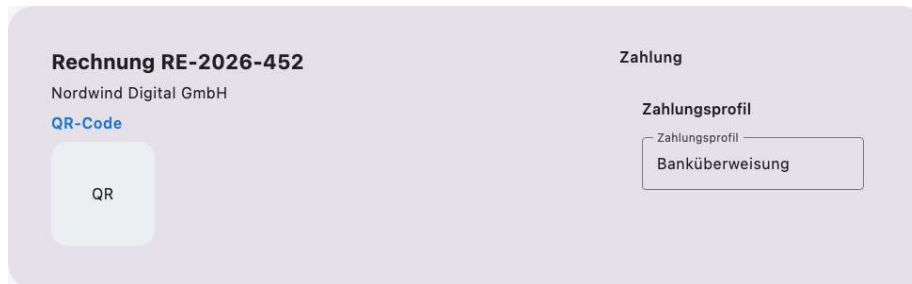


Figure XX: A QR code printed on the invoice for instant mobile payment

[i] **Pro Tip:** If you have clients who frequently miss the payment reference, enable QR codes on your invoices – it virtually eliminates reference errors.

[!] **Note:** QR code generation is only available for payment profiles with IBAN/BIC details. PayPal or other link-based profiles do not generate bank-transfer QR codes.

5.19 Document Templates

What Is a Document Template?

A **document template** controls the visual appearance of your exported PDF invoices and quotes: where the logo is placed, how the banner looks, which fonts are used, and the overall page layout. AGYNAMIX Invoicer ships with several preset templates and allows you to customize and duplicate them.

Opening the Template Editor

1. Open the tenant you want to customize
2. Scroll to the **Document Layout** section
3. Click **Edit template** (or **Select template** to choose a different preset)



Figure XX: Template selection and editing in the tenant editor

Available Layout Options

Option	Description
Banner placement	Top, side, or no banner
Logo size and position	Scale and placement of your company logo
Color scheme	Primary color used for headings and accents
Font	Select from available font families
Paper margins	Adjust whitespace around the content area
Header / Footer content	What appears in the static top and bottom area

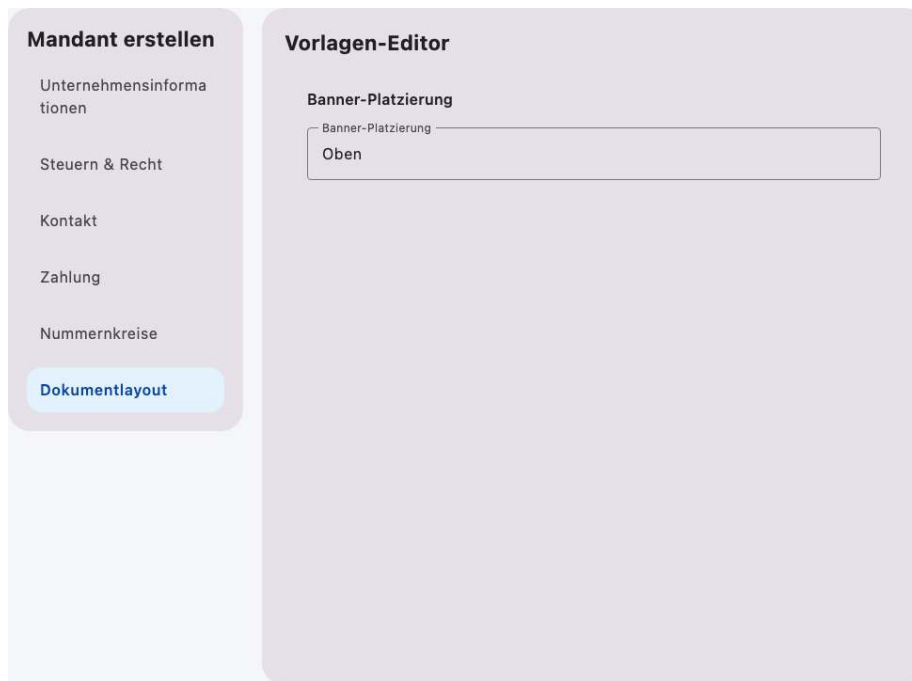


Figure XX: Layout controls in the template editor

Select or Duplicate a Preset Template

1. Click **Select template** to choose from the library of built-in designs
2. A gallery shows available presets with thumbnails
3. Click a preset to apply it
4. To keep the original preset intact and build on it: click **Duplicate** → a copy is created that you can freely modify



Figure XX: Gallery of preset templates

Live Preview

Click **Preview** at any time to see how a sample invoice would look with the current settings. The preview uses the real tenant data and a placeholder document.



Figure XX: Live PDF preview of the current template settings

Best Practices

- **Optimal logo dimensions:** Use a horizontal logo at roughly 400–600 px wide and 100–150 px tall with a transparent background (PNG)
- **Keep colors accessible:** Ensure there is good contrast between your chosen accent color and black text
- **Test on paper:** Print or save a test PDF to check how colors and fonts look when printed, not just on screen

Continue with **Chapter 6: Customer Management**

6. Customer Management

Customer Management is the heart of your invoicing. Here you maintain all information about your business partners – from company data to contact details, tax rates, and e-invoice preferences. Well-maintained customer data speeds up invoice creation and ensures professional, error-free documents.

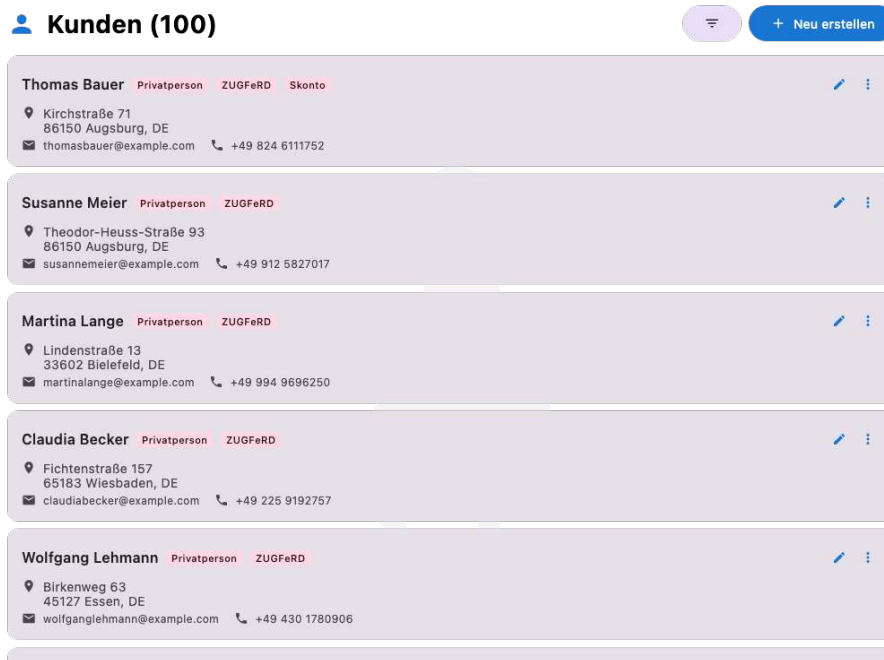


Figure 197: The customer list shows all your business partners

6.1 Customer Concept

A **customer** represents a company or individual for whom you create invoices. Each customer has:

- **Company data:** Name, owner, complete address
- **Contact details:** Billing email, general email, phone numbers, fax
- **Tax data:** VAT ID (optional), standard VAT rate
- **Currency and language:** Which currency and language for invoices
- **E-invoice preference:** ZUGFeRD, XRechnung, or no electronic invoice

Why Customer Master Data Is Important

Benefits of well-maintained customer data:

1. **Faster invoice creation:** All data available with one click
2. **Error-free documents:** No typos in addresses or tax numbers
3. **Automatic pre-filling:** VAT rate, currency, and language are automatically filled
4. **E-invoice compliance:** Correct XML formats for authorities and large companies

5. **Professional impression:** Consistent, correct customer data on all documents

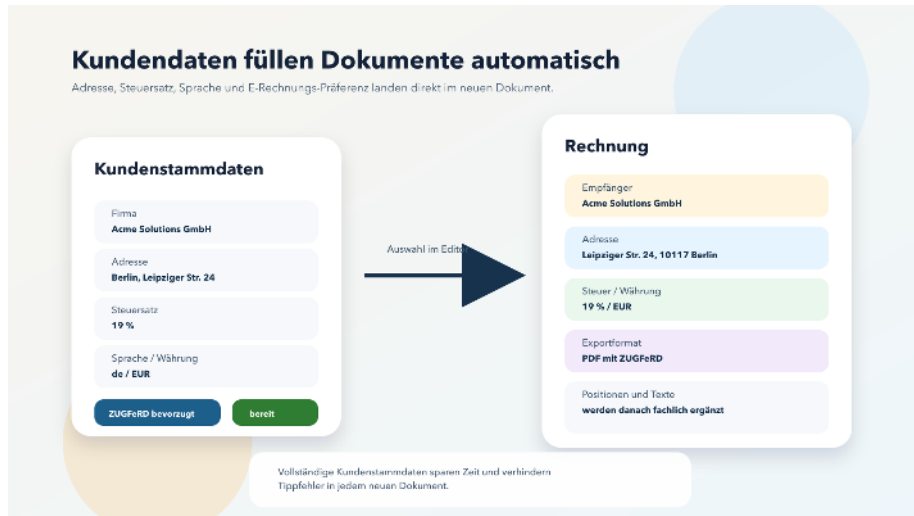


Figure 198: Customer data is automatically transferred to documents

[i] **Pro Tip:** Invest time in complete customer data when first creating them – it pays off with every invoice.

6.2 Customer List

The customer list shows all your business partners at a glance.

List Overview

Each entry shows:

- **Company name:** Name of the company or person
- **Address:** Street, postal code, and city in one line
- **Contact details:** Billing email and phone (if available)
- **VAT ID:** Value Added Tax Identification Number (if available)

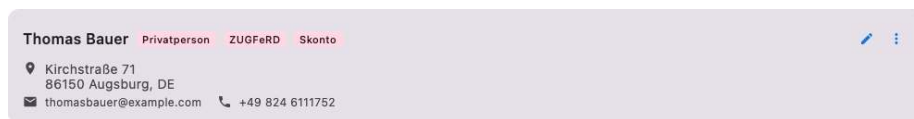
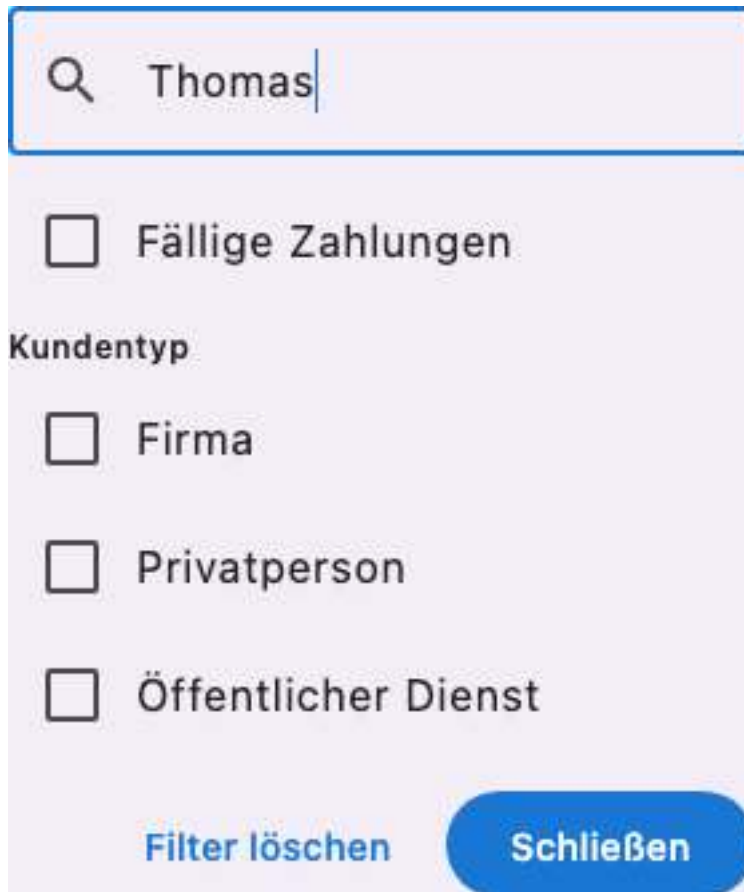


Figure 199: Each entry shows the most important customer data

Search Customers

Use the **search bar** at the top to quickly find customers.

Search by: - Company name (e.g., “Acme Corporation”) - Owner (e.g., “John Doe”)



Search bar:

Fällige Zahlungen

Kumentyp

Firma

Privatperson

Öffentlicher Dienst

[Filter löschen](#) [Schließen](#)

Figure 200:

Search by company name or owner

[i] **Pro Tip:** The search works in real-time – just start typing without pressing Enter.

Filter Customers

Click the **filter icon** (funnel) to apply special filters.

Available filters: - **Due payments:** Shows only customers with overdue invoices

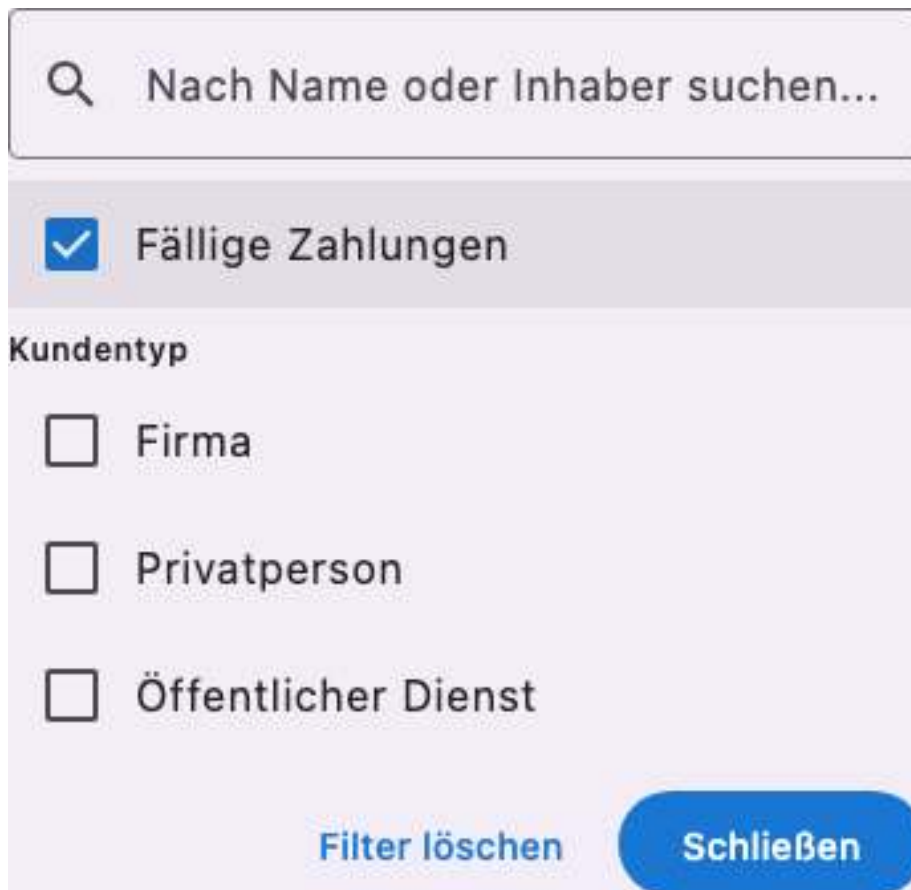


Figure 201: Filter customers with due payments

Reset filters: Click **Clear filters** to remove all filters.



Figure 202: Reset filters

[*] **Workflow Tip:** Use the “Due payments” filter for weekly payment reminders – you’ll immediately see who needs follow-up.

Empty Customer List

If you haven’t created any customers yet, you’ll see a message:

No customers found
“Create your first customer to get started”

 **Kunden (0)**



Keine Kunden gefunden

Erstelle deinen ersten Kunden, um zu beginnen

Figure 203: Message when customer list is empty

6.3 Create Customer

Create New Customer

1. Click + **Create new customer** in the header
2. The creation form opens

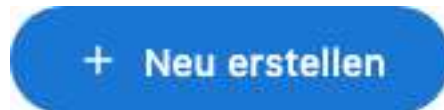


Figure 204: Button to create a new customer

The form is divided into five sections: - Customer information - Address - Contact information - Tax information - Invoice settings

6.4 Customer Information

Company Name (required field)

The name of the company or person you're billing.

Examples: - Company: "Acme Corporation GmbH" - Individual: "Dr. Jane Smith" - Authority: "City of Berlin – Department of Digitalization"

← **Neuen Kunden erstellen** ✎ Nicht gespeicherte Änderungen

Kundeninformationen

Firma
 Öffentlicher Dienst
 Privatperson

Firmenname *

Personendaten

50100

Adresse

Deutschland ✕

Kontaktinformationen

Figure 205: Enter the company name

[i] Pro Tip: Use the official company name as it appears in the commercial register or on the customer’s website.

Owner (optional)

Name of the owner, managing director, or contact person.

Examples: - “John Doe” - “Dr. Jane Smith” - “Managing Director: Michael Johnson”

← **Neuen Kunden erstellen** ✎ Nicht gespeicherte Änderungen

Kundeninformationen

Firma Öffentlicher Dienst Privatperson

Firmenname *

Personendaten

Anrede (optional) ▼ Titel (optional) Inhaber (optional) Max Mustermann

Kundennummer 50100 Käuferreferenz

Adresse

Straße * Wohnung, Suite, Gebäude (optional)

PLZ * Stadt *

Bundesland (optional) Land * Deutschland

Kontaktinformationen

Abbrechen Kunde erstellen

Figure 206: *Optionally enter the owner*

[i] Pro Tip: The owner field appears on the invoice below the company name – use it for personal contact.

Salutation (optional)

Salutation of the contact person (useful for email communication).

Examples: - “Mr” - “Ms”

Title (optional)

Optional title for the contact person.

Examples: - “Dr.” - “Prof.”

Internal Notes (optional)

Internal notes are for your internal organization and are not printed on invoices.

Customer Number (required, unique)

The **Customer Number** is an internal, unique identifier for the customer. You can use it to reference customers consistently (e.g., in conversations

or exports).

[!] **Important:** Each customer number must be unique.

Customer Reference / Leitweg-ID (optional)

An optional external reference for the customer, e.g. a **Leitweg-ID** (used by public-sector customers in Germany) or another internal identifier from your customer's systems.

6.5 Address

The customer's address appears on all invoices and must be complete.

Street (required field)

Street and house number.

Examples: - "Main Street 123" - "Friedrich Street 45b" - "Market Square 7"

The screenshot shows a web form titled "Neuen Kunden erstellen" (Create new customer). The form is divided into several sections: "Kundeninformationen" (Customer information) with tabs for "Firma", "Öffentlicher Dienst", and "Privatperson"; "Personendaten" (Personal data) with fields for "Anrede (optional)", "Titel (optional)", "Inhaber (optional)", "Kundennummer" (50100), and "Käuferreferenz"; "Adresse" (Address) with fields for "Straße *" (Hauptstraße 123), "Wohnung, Suite, Gebäude (optional)", "PLZ *", "Stadt *", "Bundesland (optional)", and "Land *" (Deutschland); and "Kontaktinformationen" (Contact information) with "Abbrechen" and "Kunde erstellen" buttons. A red notification bar at the top right says "Nicht gespeicherte Änderungen" (Unsaved changes).

Figure 207: Enter street and house number

Address Supplement (optional)

Additional address information such as floor, building, or c/o details.

Examples: - “4th Floor” - “Rear Building” - “c/o Schmidt Administration GmbH” - “Building A, Room 301”

← **Neuen Kunden erstellen** ✎ Nicht gespeicherte Änderungen

Kundeninformationen

Firma Öffentlicher Dienst Privatperson

Firmenname *

Personendaten

Anrede (optional) ▼ Titel (optional) Inhaber (optional)

Kundennummer 50100 Käuferreferenz

Adresse

Straße * Wohnung, Suite, Gebäude (optional) 4. Etage

PLZ * Stadt *

Bundesland (optional) Land * Deutschland ✕ ▼

Kontaktinformationen

Abbrechen Kunde erstellen

Figure 208: Optionally enter an address supplement

Postal Code (required field)

Postal code.

Examples: - Germany: “10117”, “80331” - Austria: “1010”, “5020” - Switzerland: “8001”, “3011”

← **Neuen Kunden erstellen** ✎ Nicht gespeicherte Änderungen

Kundeninformationen

Firma
 Öffentlicher Dienst
 Privatperson

Firmenname *

Personendaten

Anrede (optional) ▾ Titel (optional) Inhaber (optional)

Kundennummer: 50100 Käuferreferenz

Adresse

Straße * Wohnung, Suite, Gebäude (optional)

PLZ * 10115 Stadt *

Bundesland (optional) Land * Deutschland ✕ ▾

Kontaktinformationen

Figure 209: Enter the postal code

City (required field)

City name.

Examples: - “Berlin” - “Munich” - “Vienna” - “Zurich”

← **Neuen Kunden erstellen** ✎ Nicht gespeicherte Änderungen

Kundeninformationen

Firma
 Öffentlicher Dienst
 Privatperson

Firmenname *

Personendaten

Anrede (optional) ▼ Titel (optional) Inhaber (optional)

Kundennummer 50100 Käuferreferenz

Adresse

Straße * Wohnung, Suite, Gebäude (optional)

PLZ * Stadt * Berlin

Bundesland (optional) Land * Deutschland ✕ ▼

Kontaktinformationen

Figure 210: Enter the city

State (optional)

State, region, or canton.

Examples: - Germany: “Bavaria”, “Berlin”, “North Rhine-Westphalia” - Austria: “Vienna”, “Tyrol” - Switzerland: “Zurich”, “Bern” - USA: “California”, “New York”

Figure 211: Optionally enter the state

[i] Pro Tip: In Germany, the state is usually not necessary – but for international customers (especially USA, Canada) it’s important.

Country (required field)

Country as text.

Default value: “Germany”

Examples: - “Germany” - “Austria” - “Switzerland” - “USA” or “United States”

Adresse

Das Land wird für internationale Rechnungsadressen als Freitext gepflegt.

Figure 212: Enter the country

[i] Pro Tip: Use consistent spellings – either always in German (“Deutschland”, “Österreich”) or always in English (“Germany”, “Austria”) – depending on whether your invoices are primarily in German or English.

[!] Important: The field is pre-filled with “Germany” – only change it for international customers.

6.6 Contact Information

Contact details are **not** printed on invoices but support your internal workflows (e.g., sending invoices and payment reminders via email).

[i] Pro Tip: Use the **billing email** for invoices and the **general email** for general communication.

Billing Email

Email address for invoices/payment reminders (typically accounting).

Examples: - “accounting@acme.com” - “john.doe@company.com” - “invoice@company.com”

← **Neuen Kunden erstellen** ✎ Nicht gespeicherte Änderungen

Firmenname *

Personendaten

Anrede (optional) ▼ Titel (optional) Inhaber (optional)

Kundennummer 50100 Käuferreferenz

Adresse

Straße * Wohnung, Suite, Gebäude (optional)

PLZ * Stadt *

Bundesland (optional) Land * Deutschland × ▼

Kontaktinformationen

Allgemeine E-Mail (optional) Rechnungs-E-Mail (optional) buchhaltung@acme.de

Abbrechen Kunde erstellen

Figure 213: Enter the email address

[i] Pro Tip: If the customer has a separate accounting email (e.g., accounting@. . .), use it – this way you reach the right department directly.

General Email (optional)

General email address for non-billing communication.

Examples: - “info@acme.com” - “office@company.com”

← **Neuen Kunden erstellen** ✎ Nicht gespeicherte Änderungen

Firmenname *

Personendaten

Anrede (optional) ▼ Titel (optional) Inhaber (optional)

Kundennummer 50100 Käuferreferenz

Adresse

Straße * Wohnung, Suite, Gebäude (optional)

PLZ * Stadt *

Bundesland (optional) Land * Deutschland ✕ ▼

Kontaktinformationen

Allgemeine E-Mail (optional) info@acme.de Rechnungs-E-Mail (optional)

Abbrechen Kunde erstellen

Figure 213b: Enter the general email address

Main Phone

Phone number of the contact person.

Examples: - “+49 30 12345678” (with country code) - “030 / 123 456 78” (without country code) - “0171 / 123 45 67” (mobile number)

Figure 214: Enter the phone number

[i] Pro Tip: Always save the **direct line** to accounting if available – this saves time for payment inquiries.

Alternate Phone (optional)

Additional phone number (e.g., mobile or back office).

Fax (optional)

Fax number (if the customer still uses fax for official communication).

6.7 Tax Information

Tax data determines how invoices are calculated for this customer.

VAT ID (optional)

Value Added Tax Identification Number of the customer (if available).

Format: - Germany: DE + 9 digits (e.g., “DE123456789”) - Austria: ATU + 8 digits (e.g., “ATU12345678”) - Switzerland: CHE + 9 digits + MWST (e.g., “CHE123456789MWST”)

Examples: - “DE123456789” - “ATU87654321” - “FR12345678901”

The screenshot shows a web form for creating a new customer. The title is "Neuen Kunden erstellen". There is a back arrow and a notification "Nicht gespeicherte Änderungen". The form is divided into several sections: "Kundennummer" (50100), "Käuferreferenz", "Adresse" (with sub-fields for Straße, Wohnung/Suite/Gebäude, PLZ, Stadt, Bundesland, and Land: Deutschland), "Kontaktinformationen" (with sub-fields for Allgemeine E-Mail, Rechnungs-E-Mail, Telefon, and Fax), and "Steuerinformationen" (with sub-fields for USt-IdNr. and Steuernummer). At the bottom, there are two buttons: "Abbrechen" and "Kunde erstellen".

Figure 215: Enter the customer’s VAT ID

When do you need the VAT ID? - For **intra-community supplies** (EU), the VAT ID is mandatory - For **reverse charge procedure** (reversal of tax liability) - For **public clients** with e-invoice obligation

[i] **Pro Tip:** You can find the VAT ID at the Federal Central Tax Office or on the customer’s website (usually in the imprint).

[!] **Important:** If the customer doesn’t have or provide a VAT ID, leave the field empty – not all businesses are subject to VAT (e.g., small business owners).

Tax ID / Tax Number (optional)

Optional tax identifier of the customer (if you need it for internal processes).

VAT Rate (%) (required field)

The standard VAT rate used for invoices to this customer.

Default value: 19 (for Germany)

Common rates: - **19%:** German standard rate - **7%:** Reduced rate (books,

food, etc.) - **0%**: Reverse charge, export delivery, small business regulation
- **20%**: Austria standard rate - **8.1%**: Switzerland standard rate

Steuerinformationen

Standard-Umsatzsteuersatz für neue Rechnungen an diesen Kunden.

UST-Satz (%) 19,0

UST-Prozentsatz eingeben (z. B. 19,0 für 19 %)

Figure 216: Enter the standard VAT rate

Input format: - Enter the rate as a **decimal number**: “19” or “19.0” for 19% - Use period or comma as decimal separator: “7.0” or “7,0”

Note text: “Enter VAT percentage (e.g., 19.0 for 19%)”

[i] **Pro Tip:** The rate entered here is used as the **default pre-fill** for all line items in invoices to this customer – but you can override it for each line item individually.

[*] **Workflow Tip:** For customers you frequently bill with a reduced rate (e.g., publishers, food retailers), set the default rate to 7% – this saves time when creating invoices.

Currency (required field)

The currency in which invoices to this customer are issued.

Default value: EUR

Common currencies: - **EUR:** Euro (Germany, Austria, etc.) - **USD:** US Dollar - **GBP:** British Pound - **CHF:** Swiss Franc

Input format: - Enter the **ISO 4217 currency code** (3 letters) - Examples: “EUR”, “USD”, “GBP”, “CHF”, “JPY”

← **Neuen Kunden erstellen** ✎ Nicht gespeicherte Änderungen

Kontaktinformationen

Steuerinformationen

Währungscode (z. B. EUR, USD, GBP)

Figure 217: Enter the currency

Note text: “Currency code (e.g., EUR, USD, GBP)”

Warning for unknown currency: If you enter an unknown code, a warning appears: > “Unknown currency code. The code will be displayed unchanged.”

The screenshot shows a web form titled "Neuen Kunden erstellen" (Create New Customer). At the top right, there is a red button labeled "Nicht gespeicherte Änderungen" (Unsaved changes). The form is divided into several sections:

- Address Section:** Includes fields for "Straße *" (Street), "Wohnung, Suite, Gebäude (optional)" (Apartment, Suite, Building), "PLZ *" (Postal Code), "Stadt *" (City), "Bundesland (optional)" (State), and "Land *" (Country) set to "Deutschland".
- Kontaktinformationen (Contact Information):** Includes "Allgemeine E-Mail (optional)" (General Email), "Rechnungs-E-Mail (optional)" (Invoice Email), "Telefon (Hauptnummer)" (Main Phone), "Telefon (Alternativ)" (Alternative Phone), and "Fax".
- Steuerinformationen (Tax Information):** Includes "USt-IdNr. (optional)" (VAT ID), "Steuernummer (optional)" (Tax Number), "Rechnungssprache *" (Invoice Language) set to "Deutsch", "Währung *" (Currency) set to "XYZ" (highlighted with a red box), and "E-Rechnung *" (E-Invoice) set to "ZUGFeRD / Factur-X".

Below the "Währung" field, a warning message reads: "Unbekannter Währungscode. Der Code wird unverändert angezeigt." (Unknown currency code. The code will be displayed unchanged). At the bottom, there are two buttons: "Abbrechen" (Cancel) and "Kunde erstellen" (Create Customer).

Figure 218: Warning for unknown currency

[i] **Pro Tip:** The currency determines which symbol appears on the invoice (€, \$, £, etc.) – only change it for international customers.

[!] **Important:** The currency **cannot be changed** after the first save if invoices already exist – create a new customer if needed.

6.8 Invoice Settings

Invoice settings determine how invoices are generated for this customer.

Invoice Language (required field)

The language in which invoices to this customer are issued.

Options: - **German:** All texts on the invoice (headings, footers) are in German - **English:** All texts on the invoice are in English

Rechnungseinstellungen

Die Sprache bestimmt die Überschriften und Standardtexte auf der Rechnung.

Rechnungssprache

Deutsch

Deutsch
Englisch

Figure 219: Select the invoice language

Default value: German

What changes?

Element	German	English
Document type	“Rechnung”	“Invoice”
Line item table	“Pos.”, “Beschreibung”, “Menge”	“Pos.”, “Description”, “Quantity”
Totals	“Nettobetrag”, “MwSt.”, “Gesamtbetrag”	“Subtotal”, “VAT”, “Total”
Payment terms	“Zahlbar bis”	“Due date”
Footer	“Vielen Dank für Ihr Vertrauen”	“Thank you for your business”

Rechnung Deutsch vs. Englisch

Deutsch	Englisch
Rechnung	Invoice
Beschreibung	Description
Gesamtbetrag	Total
Zahlbar bis	Due date

Figure 220: Comparison of invoice in German and English

[i] Pro Tip: For international customers, English is recommended – even if the billing address is in Germany.

E-Invoice (required field)

Determines whether and which electronic invoice format is used for this customer.

Options: - **None:** PDF invoice only (classic paper invoice as PDF) - **ZUGFeRD / Factur-X:** PDF with embedded XML metadata (hybrid format) - **XRechnung / CII:** Separate XML file (pure XML format)

Rechnungseinstellungen

Wähle das bevorzugte E-Rechnungs-Format für diesen Kunden.

E-Rechnung
ZUGFeRD / Factur-X

Optionen
Keine
ZUGFeRD / Factur-X
XRechnung / CII

Figure 221: Select the e-invoice format

Default value: None

Option 1: No E-Invoice You receive a classic **PDF document** without electronic metadata.

Advantages: - [+] Simple and universally readable - [+] No technical requirements - [+] Ideal for private customers and small companies

Disadvantages: - ✗ No automatic invoice processing at recipient - ✗ Not suitable for public clients

PDF ohne E-Rechnung

Klassisches PDF ohne elektronische Metadaten.

rechnung-2025-0007.pdf
Klassisches PDF
Keine XML-Metadaten
Viewer: Browser-Vorschau

Figure 222: Classic PDF without electronic metadata

Option 2: ZUGFeRD / Factur-X You receive a **hybrid PDF** with embedded XML metadata.

What is ZUGFeRD? - ZUGFeRD = Central User Guide of the Forum for Electronic Invoicing Germany - A PDF document with invisible XML data embedded in the PDF - Can be both read by humans and processed by machines

Advantages: - [+] Universally readable (any PDF viewer displays it) - [+] Automatic processing possible (accounting software can read XML) - [+] Only **one file** (no separate XML files needed) - [+] Recognized throughout the EU (also known as Factur-X)

Disadvantages: - ✗ Not all public clients accept ZUGFeRD (some require XRechnung)

ZUGFeRD PDF

PDF mit eingebetteten XML-Metadaten für strukturierte Verarbeitung.

```
rechnung-2025-0007-zugferd.pdf
ZUGFeRD-PDF
factur-x.xml eingebettet
Profil: EN16931
```

Figure 223: ZUGFeRD PDF with embedded XML metadata

[i] **Pro Tip:** ZUGFeRD is the best choice for **business customers** who use modern accounting software – they can both read and automatically import the invoice.

Option 3: XRechnung / CII You receive a **separate XML file** in addition to the PDF.

What is XRechnung? - XRechnung is the **standard for public clients** in Germany - A pure XML file (CII = Cross Industry Invoice) without PDF - Must be submitted via special portals (e.g., OZG-RE, XRechnung portal)

Advantages: - [+] Mandatory for public clients (authorities, municipalities, state-owned companies) - [+] Fully machine-readable - [+] Automatic processing in administrative software

Disadvantages: - ✗ Not human-readable (XML file is pure source code) - ✗ You must **additionally create a PDF** for your records - ✗ Requires upload via special portals (cannot be sent via email)

XRechnung XML-Datei

Separate XML-Ausgabe für öffentliche Auftraggeber.

```
rechnung-2025-0007.xml
<rsm:CrossIndustryInvoice>
  <ram:BuyerReference>Leitweg-ID 991-01484-64</ram:BuyerReference>
  <ram:GrandTotalAmount currencyID="EUR">1190.00</ram:GrandTotalAmount>
</rsm:CrossIndustryInvoice>
```

Figure 224: XRechnung as separate XML file

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use XRechnung **only for public clients** who explicitly require it – for all other customers, ZUGFeRD is the better choice.

[!] **Important:** Since November 2020, all public clients in Germany are required to accept electronic invoices (XRechnung or ZUGFeRD). Check in advance which format your customer prefers.

When Which Format?

Decision guide:

Customer Type	Recommended Format	Reason
Private customer	None	Classic PDF is sufficient
Small company (< 10 employees)	None or ZUGFeRD	Depends on whether they use modern accounting software
Medium/Large company	ZUGFeRD	Automatic invoice processing saves time
Authority, public client	XRechnung	Legally required since Nov. 2020
International company (EU)	ZUGFeRD	EU-wide standard (Factor-X)

Welches E-Rechnungs-Format für welchen Kunden?

Entscheidungshilfe
 Privatkunde -> Keine
 Kleine Firma -> Keine oder ZUGFeRD
 Mittlere/Große Firma -> ZUGFeRD
 Behörde -> XRechnung

Figure 225: Which e-invoice format for which customer?

[*] **Workflow Tip:** Ask new customers on first contact if they prefer e-invoices – this saves later inquiries.

6.9 Save Customer

Save

Click **Create customer** (or **Update customer** when editing) to save the customer.

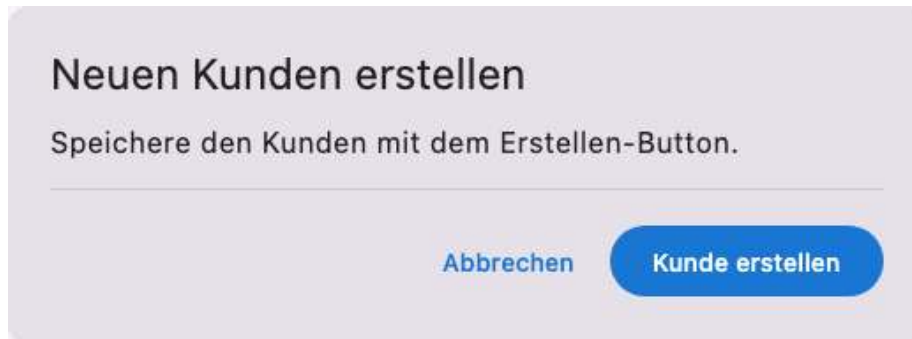


Figure 226: Save the customer with the create button

Validation:

The application checks before saving: - [+] Company name filled in - [+] Street filled in - [+] Postal code filled in - [+] City filled in - [+] Country filled in

Validierungsfehler

Pflichtfelder werden vor dem Speichern rot markiert.

Figure 227: Validation errors are marked in red

[i] Pro Tip: The email and phone fields are **not** mandatory, but highly recommended – without email you can't send payment reminders later.

Go Back Without Saving

Click the **back arrow** in the upper left corner to return to the previous screen. If you have unsaved changes, a dialog appears:

Unsaved Changes

“You have unsaved changes. Do you really want to continue?”

- **Discard:** Changes will not be saved
- **Cancel:** Stay in the form

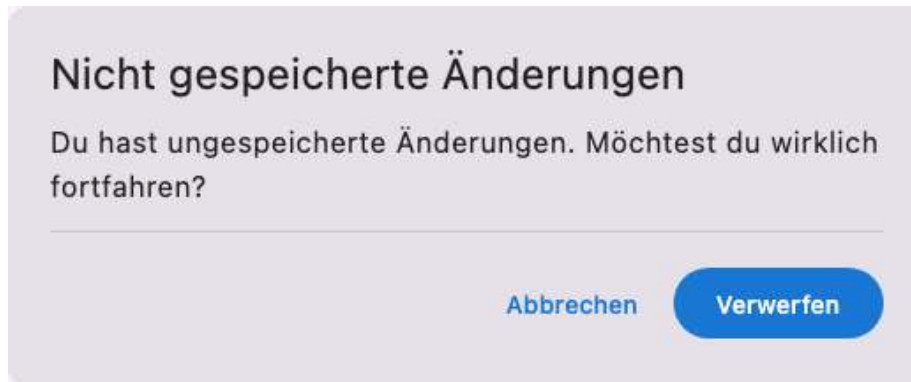


Figure 228: Warning for unsaved changes

6.10 Edit Customer

Open Customer

Click on a customer in the list to open them. The edit form shows all saved data.

Bestehenden Kunden bearbeiten

Das Bearbeitungsformular zeigt alle gespeicherten Daten des Kunden an.

Firmenname	<input type="text" value="Thomas Bauer"/>
Rechnungs-E-Mail	<input type="text" value="buchhaltung@acme.de"/>
<input type="button" value="Kunde aktualisieren"/>	

Figure 229: Click on a customer to edit them

Edit Fields

You can edit all fields, **except:** - Currency (cannot be changed after first save if documents already exist)

[!] **Important:** Changes to customer data **only affect new documents** – already published documents keep their saved data (GoBD compliance: immutability).

Correct Address

If a customer has moved or you discover an error:

1. Open the customer

2. Change the address fields (street, postal code, city)
3. Click **Update customer**

Effect: - All **new** invoices show the new address - **Old** invoices keep the old address (historical accuracy)

Adresse korrigieren

Geänderte Adressdaten werden erst nach dem Speichern für neue Dokumente verwendet.

The screenshot shows a form titled 'Adresse korrigieren'. At the top, a small note states: 'Geänderte Adressdaten werden erst nach dem Speichern für neue Dokumente verwendet.' Below this are three input fields: 'Straße' containing 'Neue Anschrift 77', 'PLZ' containing '10115', and 'Stadt' containing 'Berlin'. A blue button labeled 'Kunde aktualisieren' is positioned at the bottom right of the form.

Figure 230: Change the address and save

[i] Pro Tip: If you want to send an old invoice with the new address, use the **duplicate function** (duplicate invoice → new address is transferred).

6.11 Delete Customer

Prerequisites

You can delete a customer if: - [+] No published documents exist (invoices, quotes) - [+] No timesheets exist

[!] Important: Deletion is a **soft delete** (the customer is marked as deleted but not permanently removed from the database) – this preserves historical references.

Perform Deletion

1. Click the **three-dot menu** to the right of the customer in the list
2. Select **Delete**
3. A confirmation dialog appears:

Delete customer?

“Do you really want to delete ‘Acme Corporation’? This action cannot be undone.”

- **Delete:** Confirm (red button)
- **Cancel:** Abort operation

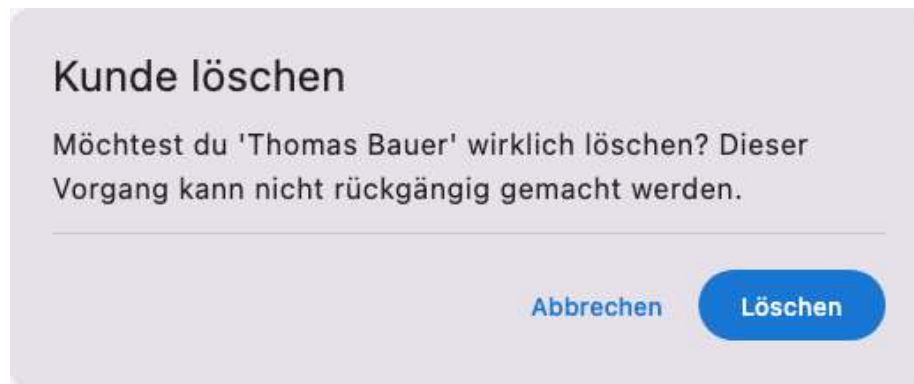


Figure 231: Confirmation dialog when deleting a customer

4. Confirm with **Delete**

What Happens When Deleting?

- The customer no longer appears **in the list**
- All associated **drafts** (non-published documents) remain but are no longer assigned to a customer
- **Published documents** remain fully intact with all customer data (GoBD compliance)

[i] **Pro Tip:** If you want to “pause” a customer (e.g., because you’re not currently working with them), you don’t need to delete them – deleted customers are only invisible but not really gone.

6.12 Customer Count

In the footer of the list you see the **number of displayed customers** in relation to the total.

Example: “25 of 100” - 25 customers are currently displayed (after search/filter) - 100 customers exist in total

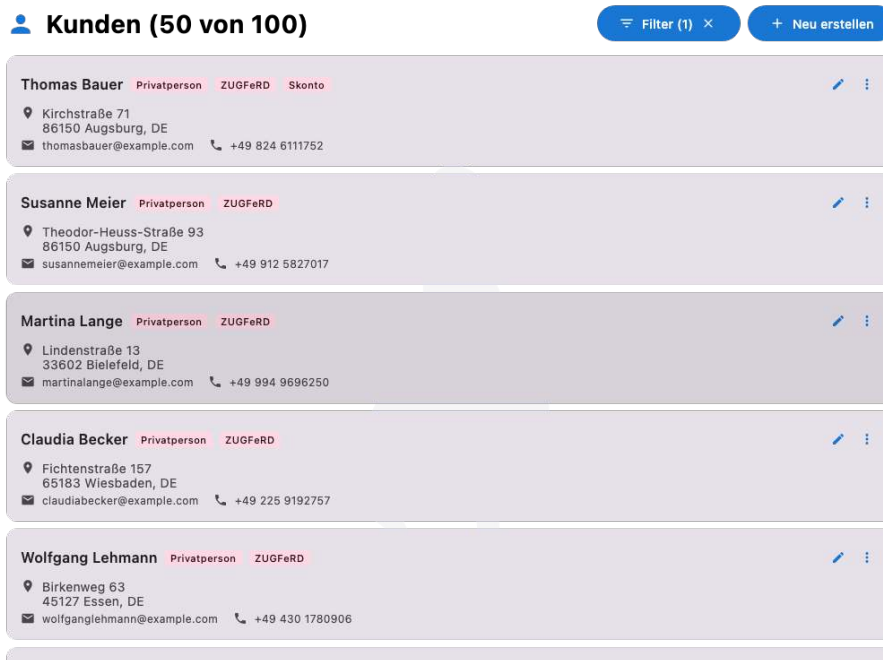


Figure 232: Number of displayed customers

[i] **Pro Tip:** If the display shows “0 of 100”, your search term or filter is too restrictive – reset filters or change the search term.

6.13 Practical Workflows

Workflow 1: Create First Customer (5 minutes)

Goal: Create your first customer with all important data.

Steps:

- 1. Create customer** (30 seconds)
 - Click + **Create new customer**
 - Company name: “Acme Corporation GmbH”
 - Owner: “John Doe, Managing Director”
- 2. Enter address** (1 minute)
 - Street: “Main Street 456”
 - Address supplement: Leave empty (if not needed)
 - Postal code: “20095”
 - City: “Hamburg”
 - State: Leave empty
 - Country: “Germany” (pre-filled)

3. **Enter contact details** (1 minute)
 - Email: “accounting@acme.com”
 - Phone: “+49 40 98765432”
4. **Enter tax data** (2 minutes)
 - VAT ID: “DE987654321” (if available, otherwise empty)
 - VAT rate: “19” (standard for Germany)
 - Currency: “EUR” (pre-filled)
5. **Invoice settings** (30 seconds)
 - Invoice language: **German** (default)
 - E-invoice: **None** (for standard business customers)
6. **Save** (10 seconds)
 - Click **Create customer**
 - Success message appears
 - You land in the customer list

Result: Your first customer is created and ready for the first invoice.

[i] **Pro Tip:** Keep customer correspondence (emails, contracts) ready to copy data correctly – especially VAT ID and email are often hard to find.

Workflow 2: Create Customer with E-Invoice (5–7 minutes)

Goal: Create a public client with XRechnung requirement.

Steps:

1. **Create customer** (30 seconds)
 - Company name: “City of Berlin – Department of Digitalization”
 - Owner: Leave empty
2. **Enter address** (1 minute)
 - Street: “Sample Street 1”
 - Postal code: “10115”
 - City: “Berlin”
 - Country: “Germany”
3. **Enter contact details** (1 minute)
 - Email: “accounting@berlin.de”
 - Phone: “+49 30 90269000”
4. **Enter tax data** (2 minutes)
 - VAT ID: “DE123456789” (public clients usually have a VAT ID)
 - VAT rate: “19”
 - Currency: “EUR”
5. **Set e-invoice** (1 minute)
 - Invoice language: **German**
 - E-invoice: **XRechnung / CII** (mandatory for public clients)
6. **Save** (10 seconds)
 - Click **Create customer**

Result: Customer is created with XRechnung preference. All future invoices to this customer automatically include the XRechnung XML file.

[*] **Workflow Tip:** Note the **Leitweg-ID** (a special ID for electronic invoice transmission) when first contacting public clients – you’ll need it later for upload in the invoice portal.

Workflow 3: International Customers with Reverse Charge (7–10 minutes)

Goal: Create an EU customer with reverse charge procedure (0% VAT).

Steps:

1. **Create customer** (30 seconds)
 - Company name: “Software Solutions Austria GmbH”
 - Owner: “Dr. Jane Smith”
2. **Enter address** (1 minute)
 - Street: “Ring Street 45”
 - Postal code: “1010”
 - City: “Vienna”
 - Country: **“Austria”** (important: change from “Germany”)
3. **Enter contact details** (1 minute)
 - Email: “accounting@software-solutions.at”
 - Phone: “+43 1 12345678”
4. **Tax data for reverse charge** (3 minutes)
 - VAT ID: **“ATU12345678”** (mandatory for reverse charge)
 - VAT rate: **“0”** (reverse charge = no VAT on invoice)
 - Currency: “EUR”
5. **Invoice settings** (1 minute)
 - Invoice language: **English** (recommended for international customers)
 - E-invoice: **ZUGFeRD** (for automatic processing)
6. **Save** (10 seconds)
 - Click **Create customer**

Result: Customer is created with 0% VAT (reverse charge). All invoices to this customer are in English and contain the note “Reverse charge – tax liability of the recipient of services”.

[!] **Important:** Verify the customer’s VAT ID at the Federal Central Tax Office (BZSt) via the website ec.europa.eu/taxation_customs/vies – only valid VAT IDs qualify for reverse charge.

[i] **Pro Tip:** For reverse charge invoices, you must add the text “Reverse charge according to Art. 196 VAT System Directive” in the invoice line item – note this as a text snippet for faster creation.

Workflow 4: Update Customer Data (2–3 minutes)

Goal: Update outdated contact details of an existing customer.

Steps:

1. **Search customer** (30 seconds)
 - Open the customer list
 - Type in the search bar: “Acme”
 - Click on “Acme Corporation GmbH”
2. **Check contact details** (30 seconds)
 - Scroll to the “Contact Information” section
 - Check email and phone
3. **Update email** (30 seconds)
 - Change email from “accounting@acme.com” to “invoices@acme.com”
4. **Update phone** (30 seconds)
 - Change phone from “+49 40 98765432” to “+49 40 11223344”
5. **Save** (10 seconds)
 - Click **Update customer**

Result: Contact details are updated. All new documents use the new data.

[~] **Workflow Tip:** Keep customer data regularly updated – change email/phone immediately when you learn of changes (e.g., from email signatures).

6.14 Pro Tips for Customer Management

[>>] **Complete data on first creation:** Invest 5 minutes when first creating a customer to carefully fill in all fields – this saves time with every invoice and prevents errors.

[i] **Always verify VAT ID:** Use the free online verification at the Federal Central Tax Office (BZSt) to validate the VAT ID – invalid numbers can lead to tax problems.

[*] **Use default VAT rate cleverly:** Set the default rate to the rate you use most frequently for this customer (e.g., 7% for publishers, 0% for EU customers) – this saves clicks when creating invoices.

[!] **Clarify e-invoice in advance:** Ask new customers on first contact if they prefer e-invoices (ZUGFeRD/XRechnung) – changing later is time-consuming.

[~] **Recommend ZUGFeRD for business customers:** Actively recommend ZUGFeRD to business customers with modern accounting software – automatic invoice processing saves time for both sides.

[i] **Consistent country spelling:** Decide once whether to use German (“Deutschland”) or English (“Germany”) and stick with it – this looks more professional.

[*] **Use accounting email:** Always save the accounting department’s email (e.g., accounting@..., invoices@...) instead of general contact emails – this way invoices reach the right department directly.

[>] **Direct line to accounting:** If available, save the direct line to accounting instead of the main number – this saves time for payment inquiries.

[i] **Don’t delete customers prematurely:** Only delete customers if you’re sure you’ll never work with them again – old customers can be reactivated anytime.

[*] **Leverage search function:** Use real-time search for quick access – just type the first letters of the company name.

6.15 Customer Import/Export (CSV)

For bulk operations (moving to a new installation, initial data entry, or syncing with other tools), you can export and import customers as CSV.

Export Customers (CSV)...

1. Click File → Export → Export Customers (CSV)...
2. Select a destination folder
3. The application creates a timestamped CSV file (e.g., customers-export-...csv)

[i] **Tip:** Export once and use the exported file as a template for your own CSV.

Import Customers (CSV)...

1. Click File → Import → Import Customers (CSV)...
2. Select a CSV file
3. Review the mapping and preview
4. Select the rows you want to import
5. Start the import

Mapping and preview

The import dialog supports:

- Enabling/disabling individual fields
- Mapping columns by header names (case-insensitive)
- Previewing rows before importing
- Highlighting issues (e.g., duplicates, invalid rows)

Required fields (for import)

To import a customer, the following information must be available:

- **Street, Postal code, City**
- At least one of: **Company name** or **Contact person**

If required values are missing, the row is marked as invalid and cannot be imported.

Duplicate detection

During preview the application highlights potential duplicates, for example:

- **Duplicate email**
- **Duplicate customer number**
- **Possible duplicate record** (same/similar customer data)

[*] **Best Practice:** If you already have customers in your database, import in smaller batches and resolve duplicates as you go.

Continue with **Chapter 7: Product Management**

7. Product Management

The **Products** section lets you maintain reusable product master data (e.g., standard services, hourly packages, fixed-price items). Products help you create sales documents faster and keep descriptions/prices consistent.

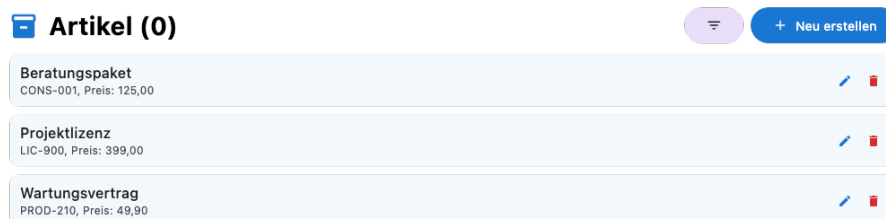


Figure XXX: Product list with search and create button

7.1 Product Concept

A **product** is a reusable template for a line item. A product can contain:

- **SKU** (required): Your internal identifier (unique)
- **Title** (required): Short name shown in lists and selection
- **Net unit price** (required): Price per unit in the document currency
- **Quantity unit** (optional): e.g., hour, piece
- **Tax rule** (optional): Default tax rule for the product
- **Description** (optional): Detailed text (Markdown supported)

[*] **Best Practice:** Use products for everything you bill repeatedly (standard consulting hour, maintenance package, hosting fee, etc.).

7.2 Product List

Navigate to the product list via the sidebar:

- Products

The list provides:

- **Search:** Filter products by typing part of the SKU or title
 - **Create:** Add a new product
 - **Edit/Delete:** Manage existing products
-

7.3 Create and Edit Products

1. Open Products
2. Click + **Create new product**
3. Fill the fields and click **Save**

Required fields

- **SKU:** Must be unique
- **Title**
- **Net unit price**

Optional fields

- **Quantity unit:** Used as default when adding the product to a document
- **Tax rule:** Used as default tax rule when adding the product to a document
- **Description:** Markdown formatting is supported

[i] **Tip:** Keep SKUs stable over time; they are useful for CSV import/export and for searching.

7.4 Using Products in Sales Documents

Products integrate into the **line items** section of sales documents.

Add line item from product

1. In a draft document, go to the **Line items** section
2. Click **Add line item from product**
3. Search and select a product

A new line item is created and pre-filled from the selected product (description/title, quantity unit, unit price, and tax rule).

Apply a product to an existing line item

In each line item row you can also pick a product via the product icon. This updates the line item fields based on the selected product.

View product details

If a line item is linked to a product, you can open the product details from the line item.

[!] **Important:** The product link is meant as a draft-time helper. The document always stores its own values; changing a product later does not retroactively change already created documents.

[?] **Continue reading:** More details about line items are in Chapter 3 (Documents).

7.5 Product Import/Export (CSV)

Products can be exported and imported as CSV.

Export Products (CSV)...

1. Click File → Export → Export Products (CSV)...
2. Select a destination folder
3. The application creates a timestamped CSV file (e.g., products-export-...csv)

Import Products (CSV)...

1. Click File → Import → Import Products (CSV)...
2. Select a CSV file
3. Review the mapping and the preview
4. Start the import

Mapping and preview

The import dialog allows you to:

- Enable/disable individual fields for import
- Map columns via header names (case-insensitive)
- Preview rows before importing
- Select which rows to import

Required fields

To import products, these fields must be present (and enabled in the mapping):

- **SKU**
- **Title**
- **Net unit price**

Rows with missing/invalid required values are marked as invalid and cannot be imported.

Duplicate detection

During preview the application highlights potential issues, for example:

- **Duplicate SKU** (within the file or already existing in the database)
- **Possible duplicate record** (same/similar product data)

[*] **Best Practice:** Start by exporting products once and use the exported file as a template for your import.

Continue with Chapter 8: Text Snippets

8. Text Snippets

Text snippets are reusable text blocks that you can insert into invoices and quotes. Once created, you can incorporate them into any number of documents with just a few clicks – ideal for recurring content like payment terms, terms and conditions, or standard descriptions. Text snippets support Markdown formatting for professional styling.

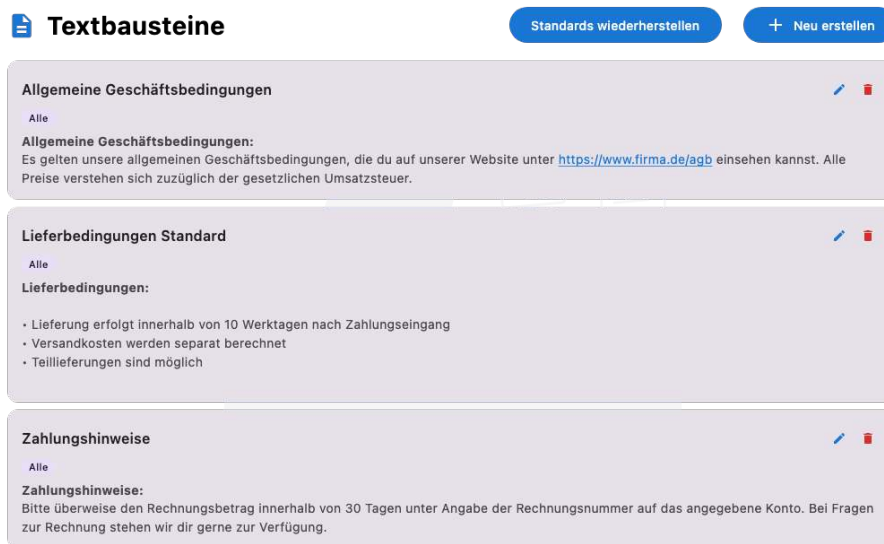


Figure 233: The text snippets list shows all your reusable content

8.1 Text Snippets Concept

A **text snippet** (text block) is reusable content that you can use across multiple documents. Each text snippet has:

- **Name:** Label for identification (e.g., “Payment Terms”, “Terms & Conditions”)
- **Content:** The actual text with Markdown formatting
- **Positioning:** Can be inserted before or after invoice line items

Why Use Text Snippets?

Benefits of reusable content:

1. **Time savings:** Create once, use as often as needed
2. **Consistency:** Same text on all documents (no typos)

3. **Professional formatting:** Markdown enables headings, lists, bold text
4. **Central maintenance:** Changes in one place – new documents automatically use the updated version
5. **Multilingual:** Different text snippets for German and English invoices



Figure 234: Text snippets are inserted into documents

[i] Pro Tip: Create at least two text snippets: One for payment terms (before line items) and one for legal notices (after line items).

8.2 Typical Use Cases

Payment Terms

Example:

****Payment Terms:****

Please transfer the invoice amount within 30 days, including the invoice number

Position: Before line items (visible directly below customer address)

← Textbaustein aktualisieren

Name *

Zahlungshinweise

Gilt für
Alle

Automatisch hinzufügen
Nie

Inhalt *

****Zahlungshinweise:****
Bitte überweise den Rechnungsbetrag innerhalb von 30 Tagen unter Angabe der Rechnungsnummer auf das angegebene Konto. Bei Fragen zur Rechnung stehen wir dir gerne zur Verfügung.

[Markdown-Formatierung wird unterstützt.](#)

Vorschau

Zahlungshinweise:
Bitte überweise den Rechnungsbetrag innerhalb von 30 Tagen unter Angabe der Rechnungsnummer auf das angegebene Konto. Bei Fragen zur Rechnung stehen wir dir gerne zur Verfügung.

Variablen

{DOCUMENT_NUMBER}
Belegnummer, so wie sie auf dem Dokument erscheint.

{DOCUMENT_DATE}
Belegdatum (lokalisiert).

Abbrechen

Textbaustein aktualisieren

Figure 235: Payment terms as text snippet

Terms and Conditions

Example:

****Terms and Conditions:****

Our general terms and conditions apply, which you can view on our website at [www](#)

Position: After line items (visible at the end of the invoice)

← Textbaustein aktualisieren

Name *

Allgemeine Geschäftsbedingungen

Gilt für
Alle

Automatisch hinzufügen
Nie

Inhalt *

****Allgemeine Geschäftsbedingungen:****
Es gelten unsere allgemeinen Geschäftsbedingungen, die du auf unserer Website unter <https://www.firma.de/agb> einsehen kannst. Alle Preise verstehen sich zuzüglich der gesetzlichen Umsatzsteuer.

[Markdown-Formatierung wird unterstützt.](#)

Vorschau

Allgemeine Geschäftsbedingungen:
Es gelten unsere allgemeinen Geschäftsbedingungen, die du auf unserer Website unter <https://www.firma.de/agb> einsehen kannst. Alle Preise verstehen sich zuzüglich der gesetzlichen Umsatzsteuer.

Variablen

{DOCUMENT_NUMBER}
Belegnummer, so wie sie auf dem Dokument erscheint.

{DOCUMENT_DATE}
Belegdatum (lokalisiert).

Abbrechen

Textbaustein aktualisieren

Figure 236: Terms and conditions as text snippet

Delivery Terms

Example:

****Delivery Terms:****

- Delivery within 10 business days after payment receipt
- Shipping costs are calculated separately
- Partial deliveries are possible

Position: After line items

← Textbaustein aktualisieren

Name *

Lieferbedingungen Standard

Gilt für
Alle

Automatisch hinzufügen
Nie

Inhalt *

****Lieferbedingungen:****

- Lieferung erfolgt innerhalb von 10 Werktagen nach Zahlungseingang
- Versandkosten werden separat berechnet
- Teillieferungen sind möglich

[Markdown-Formatierung wird unterstützt.](#)

Vorschau

Lieferbedingungen:

- Lieferung erfolgt innerhalb von 10 Werktagen nach Zahlungseingang
- Versandkosten werden separat berechnet

Abbrechen

Variablen

{DOCUMENT_NUMBER}
Belegnummer, so wie sie auf dem Dokument erscheint.

{DOCUMENT_DATE}
Belegdatum (lokalisiert).

Textbaustein aktualisieren

Figure 237: Delivery terms with list

Warranty Information

Example:

****Warranty:****

We provide a 24-month warranty on all products from the date of purchase. The wa

Position: After line items

Project Description

Example:

****Project Description:****

The following services were provided as part of the "Website Relaunch" project.

Position: Before line items

[i] Pro Tip: For international customers, you can create English versions of the same text snippets (e.g., "Payment Terms" instead of "Zahlungshinweise").

8.3 Text Snippets List

The text snippets list shows all your reusable content at a glance.

List Overview

Each entry shows:

- **Name:** Label of the text snippet
- **Content preview:** The first lines of the text (up to 6 lines)
- **Action buttons:** Edit and Delete

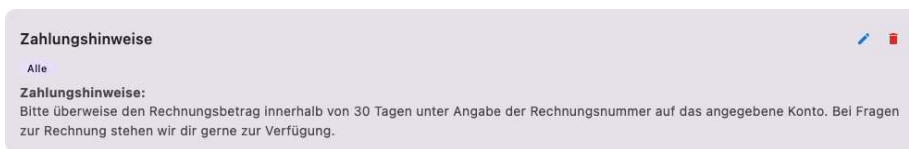


Figure 238: Each entry shows name and content preview

Empty Text Snippets List

If you haven't created any text snippets yet, you'll see a message:

No text snippets yet
"Create reusable text snippets for invoices and emails."

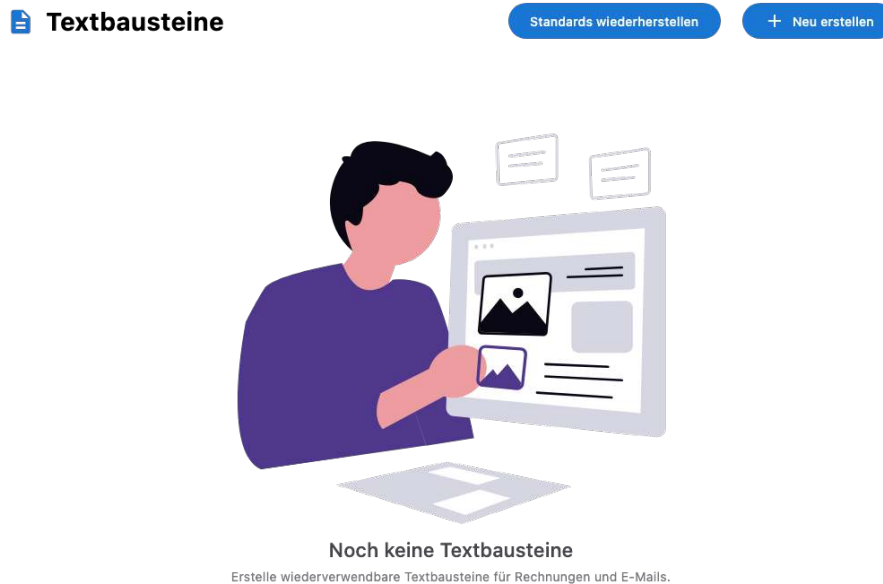


Figure 239: Message when text snippets list is empty

8.4 Create Text Snippet

Create New Text Snippet

1. Click + **Create new text snippet** in the header
2. The creation form opens



Figure 240: Button to create a new text snippet

The form has two fields: - Name (required field) - Content (required field, with Markdown support)

8.5 Name (required field)

The name is used to identify the text snippet in the list and when inserting into documents.

Recommendations: - Short and concise (e.g., “Payment Terms”, “Terms & Conditions”, “Delivery Terms”) - Self-explanatory (you should immediately know what the text snippet contains) - For multilingual text snippets: Mark the language (e.g., “Payment Terms EN”, “Zahlungshinweise DE”)

Examples: - “Payment Terms” - “Terms and Conditions” - “Standard Delivery Terms” - “24 Month Warranty Information” - “Website Project Description”

Name
Zahlungsbedingungen

Figure 241: Enter a descriptive name

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use numbers or prefixes for similar text snippets (e.g., “01 – Standard Payment Terms”, “02 – Express Payment Terms”) – this keeps them sorted in the list.

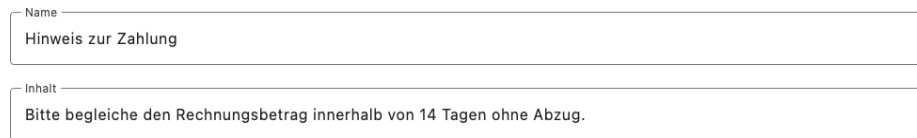
8.6 Content (required field)

The content is the actual text that will be inserted into documents. You can use **Markdown formatting** to style the text professionally.

Plain Text

Example:

Please transfer the invoice amount within 30 days, including the invoice number as r



Name
Hinweis zur Zahlung

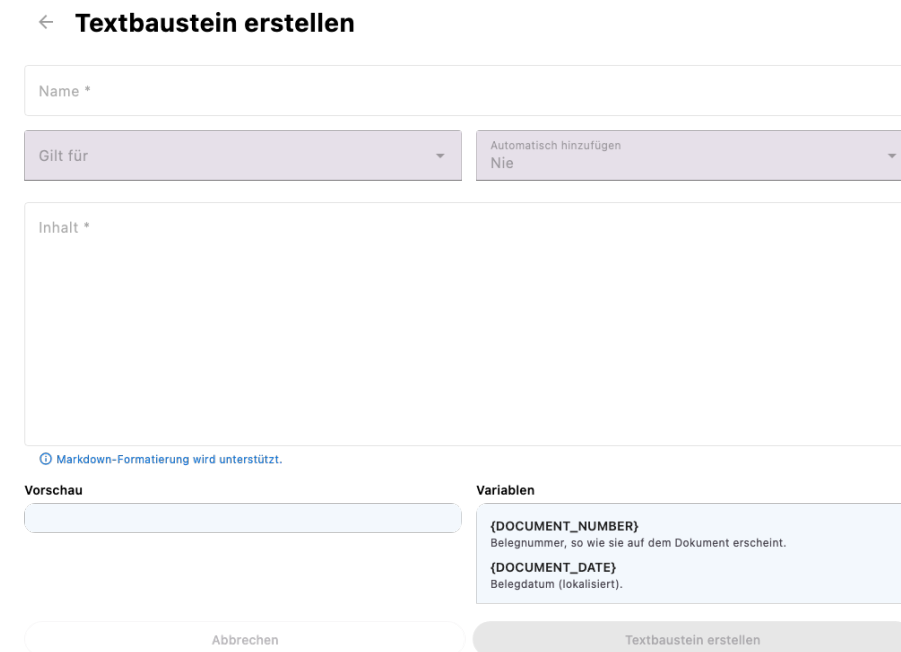
Inhalt
Bitte begleiche den Rechnungsbetrag innerhalb von 14 Tagen ohne Abzug.

Figure 242: Enter the text

Markdown Formatting

Markdown is a simple markup language that lets you format text. The formatting is displayed on the invoice in the PDF.

Note text in form: “Markdown formatting is supported.”



← **Textbaustein erstellen**

Name *

Gilt für

Automatisch hinzufügen
Nie

Inhalt *

[Markdown-Formatierung wird unterstützt.](#)

Vorschau

Variablen

{DOCUMENT_NUMBER}
Belegnummer, so wie sie auf dem Dokument erscheint.

{DOCUMENT_DATE}
Belegdatum (lokalisiert).

Abbrechen

Textbaustein erstellen

Figure 243: Note about Markdown support

8.7 Markdown Syntax

Bold Text

Enclose text with **double asterisks** for bold text.

Syntax:

****Payment Terms:****

Result: Payment Terms:

← Textbaustein aktualisieren

Name *

Fettschrift

Gilt für
Alle

Automatisch hinzufügen
Nie

Inhalt *

****Zahlbar innerhalb von 14 Tagen****

[Markdown-Formatierung wird unterstützt.](#)

Vorschau

Zahlbar innerhalb von 14 Tagen

Variablen

{DOCUMENT_NUMBER}
Belegnummer, so wie sie auf dem Dokument erscheint.

{DOCUMENT_DATE}
Belegdatum (lokalisiert).

Abbrechen

Textbaustein aktualisieren

Figure 244: Bold text with double asterisks

Italic Text

Enclose text with *single asterisks* for italic text.

Syntax:

Important: Please include invoice number.

Result: *Important:* Please include invoice number.

← Textbaustein aktualisieren

Name *

Kursivschrift

Gilt für
Alle

Automatisch hinzufügen
Nie

Inhalt *

Bitte beachte unsere Bankverbindung im Fußbereich.

[Markdown-Formatierung wird unterstützt.](#)

Vorschau

Bitte beachte unsere Bankverbindung im Fußbereich.

Variablen

{DOCUMENT_NUMBER}
Belegnummer, so wie sie auf dem Dokument erscheint.

{DOCUMENT_DATE}
Belegdatum (lokalisiert).

Abbrechen

Textbaustein aktualisieren

Figure 245: *Italic text with single asterisks*

Headings

Use **hash symbols (#)** for headings. More hashes = smaller heading.

Syntax:

Large Heading
Medium Heading
Small Heading

Result:

Large Heading

Medium Heading

Small Heading

← **Textbaustein aktualisieren**

Name *
Überschriften

Gilt für
Alle

Automatisch hinzufügen
Nie

Inhalt *
Zahlungsbedingungen

Skonto

3 % innerhalb von 7 Tagen

[Markdown-Formatierung wird unterstützt.](#)

Vorschau

Zahlungsbedingungen

Skonto

Variablen

{DOCUMENT_NUMBER}
Belegnummer, so wie sie auf dem Dokument erscheint.

{DOCUMENT_DATE}
Belegdatum (lokalisiert).

Abbrechen

Textbaustein aktualisieren

Figure 246: Headings with hash symbols

[i] **Pro Tip:** For text snippets in invoices, **### Small headings** (3 hashes) are recommended – larger headings often appear oversized.

Bullet Lists (unordered)

Use **hyphens (-)** or ****asterisks (**)** for unordered lists.

Syntax:

```
**Delivery Terms:**  
- Delivery within 10 business days  
- Shipping costs calculated separately  
- Partial deliveries possible
```

Result:

Delivery Terms: - Delivery within 10 business days - Shipping costs calculated separately - Partial deliveries possible

← Textbaustein aktualisieren

Name *

Ungeordnete Liste

Gilt für
Alle

Automatisch hinzufügen
Nie

Inhalt *

- Rechnung prüfen
- Betrag überweisen
- Beleg archivieren

[Markdown-Formatierung wird unterstützt.](#)

Vorschau

- Rechnung prüfen
- Betrag überweisen
- Beleg archivieren

Variablen

{DOCUMENT_NUMBER}
Belegnummer, so wie sie auf dem Dokument erscheint.

{DOCUMENT_DATE}
Belegdatum (lokalisiert).

Abbrechen

Textbaustein aktualisieren

Figure 247: Unordered list with hyphens

Numbered Lists (ordered)

Use **numbers with period (1., 2., 3.)** for numbered lists.

Syntax:

```
**Payment Steps:**  
1. Review invoice  
2. Transfer amount  
3. Await payment confirmation
```

Result:

Payment Steps: 1. Review invoice 2. Transfer amount 3. Await payment confirmation

← Textbaustein aktualisieren

Name *

Nummerierte Liste

Gilt für
Alle

Automatisch hinzufügen
Nie

Inhalt *

1. Erste Abschlagszahlung
2. Zweite Abschlagszahlung
3. Schlussrechnung

[Markdown-Formatierung wird unterstützt.](#)

Vorschau

1. Erste Abschlagszahlung
2. Zweite Abschlagszahlung
3. Schlussrechnung

Variablen

{DOCUMENT_NUMBER}
Belegnummer, so wie sie auf dem Dokument erscheint.

{DOCUMENT_DATE}
Belegdatum (lokalisiert).

Abbrechen

Textbaustein aktualisieren

Figure 248: Numbered list with numbers

Nested Lists

You can also nest lists by adding **two spaces** before the hyphen/number.

Syntax:

```
**Warranty Conditions:**  
- Material and workmanship defects:  
  - 24 months warranty  
  - Free replacement  
- Excluded:  
  - Improper use  
  - Wear parts
```

Result:

Warranty Conditions: - Material and workmanship defects: - 24 months warranty - Free replacement - Excluded: - Improper use - Wear parts

← Textbaustein aktualisieren

Name *

Verschachtelte Liste

Gilt für
Alle

Automatisch hinzufügen
Nie

Inhalt *

- Leistungspaket
 - Analyse
 - Umsetzung
 - Abschlussdokumentation

[Markdown-Formatierung wird unterstützt.](#)

Vorschau

- Leistungspaket
- Analyse
- Umsetzung
- Abschlussdokumentation

Variablen

{DOCUMENT_NUMBER}
Belegnummer, so wie sie auf dem Dokument erscheint.

{DOCUMENT_DATE}
Belegdatum (lokalisiert).

Abbrechen

Textbaustein aktualisieren

Figure 249: Nested list with indentation

Links

Use **square brackets + parentheses** for clickable links.

Syntax:

Find our terms and conditions at `[www.company.com/terms]` (<https://www.company.com/terms>)

Result: Find our terms and conditions at www.company.com/terms.

← Textbaustein aktualisieren

Name *

Links

Gilt für
Alle

Automatisch hinzufügen
Nie

Inhalt *

Weitere Informationen findest du im [Support-Portal](https://example.org/support).

Markdown-Formatierung wird unterstützt.

Vorschau

Weitere Informationen findest du im [Support-Portal](#).

Variablen

{DOCUMENT_NUMBER}
Belegnummer, so wie sie auf dem Dokument erscheint.

{DOCUMENT_DATE}
Belegdatum (lokalisiert).

Abbrechen

Textbaustein aktualisieren

Figure 250: Links with square and round brackets

[!] **Important:** Links are not clickable on printed PDFs – for invoices, it’s recommended to provide the URL as plain text (e.g., “www.company.com/terms”).

Line Breaks

For a **single line break**, add **two spaces** at the end of a line, followed by Enter.

Syntax:

First line
Second line

For a paragraph (more spacing), insert a **blank line**.

Syntax:

First paragraph.

Second paragraph.

← Textbaustein aktualisieren

Name *

Zeilenumbrüche

Gilt für
Alle

Automatisch hinzufügen
Nie

Inhalt *

Erste Zeile
Zweite Zeile

Dritter Absatz mit Abstand.

Markdown-Formatierung wird unterstützt.

Vorschau

Erste Zeile
Zweite Zeile

Dritter Absatz mit Abstand.

Variablen

{DOCUMENT_NUMBER}
Belegnummer, so wie sie auf dem Dokument erscheint.

{DOCUMENT_DATE}
Belegdatum (lokalisiert).

Abbrechen

Textbaustein aktualisieren

Figure 251: Line breaks and paragraphs

Combinations

You can combine different formatting:

Syntax:

Important Payment Terms:

Please note the following points **carefully**:

- Transfer the amount **within 30 days**
- Include the invoice number as reference
- Contact us at accounting@company.com with questions

Find more information at www.company.com/payment.

← **Textbaustein aktualisieren**

Name *

Kombinierte Formatierung

Gilt für
Alle

Automatisch hinzufügen
Nie

Inhalt *

Versand

****Wichtig:****

- Lieferung frei Haus
- *Tracking-Link* folgt per E-Mail

Mehr unter [FAQ](https://example.org/faq).

🔗 Markdown-Formatierung wird unterstützt.

Vorschau

Versand

Wichtig:

Variablen

{DOCUMENT_NUMBER}
Belegnummer, so wie sie auf dem Dokument erscheint.

{DOCUMENT_DATE}
Belegdatum (lokalisiert).

Abbrechen

Textbaustein aktualisieren

Figure 252: Combination of bold, italic, and lists

8.8 Markdown Preview

Live Preview in Form

While entering content, you **cannot see the formatting directly** – the application only shows the raw text with Markdown syntax.

To check the formatting: 1. Save the text snippet 2. Create a test invoice 3. Insert the text snippet 4. Use the **preview/PDF function** of the invoice

Inhalt

****Wichtig****

- Punkt A
- Punkt B

[Link](https://example.org)

Figure 253: Raw text with Markdown syntax in form

[i] Pro Tip: Use an external Markdown editor (e.g., dillinger.io) with live preview to compose longer texts and then paste them via copy & paste.

8.9 Save Text Snippet

Save

Click **Create text snippet** (or **Update text snippet** when editing) to save the text snippet.



Figure 254: Save the text snippet

with the create button

Validation:

The application checks before saving: - [+] Name filled in - [+] Content filled in

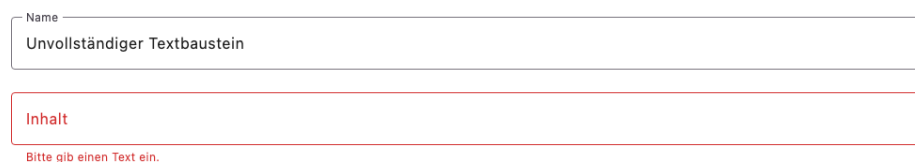


Figure 255: Validation errors are marked in red

Go Back Without Saving

Click the **back arrow** in the upper left corner to return to the previous screen. If you have unsaved changes, a dialog appears:

Unsaved Changes

“You have unsaved changes. Do you really want to continue?”

- **Discard:** Changes will not be saved
- **Cancel:** Stay in the form

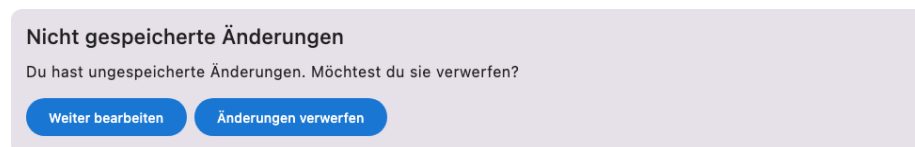


Figure 256: Warning for unsaved changes

8.10 Edit Text Snippet

Open Text Snippet

Click on a text snippet in the list to open it. The edit form shows all saved data.

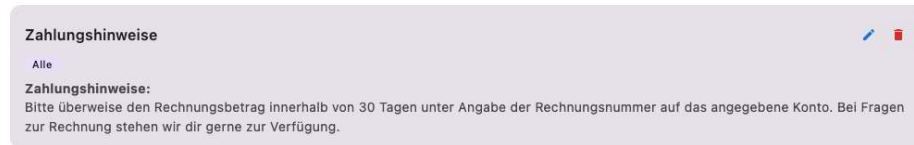


Figure 257: Click on a text snippet to edit it

Edit Fields

You can edit all fields: - Name - Content (with Markdown formatting)

[!] **Important:** Changes to text snippets **only affect new documents** – already published documents keep their original text (GoBD compliance: immutability).

Why? Text snippets are **copied into the document** (embedded) when the invoice is published. Later changes to the text snippet have no effect on already published documents.

Figure 258: Change name or content

[i] **Pro Tip:** If you discover an error in an already sent document, you must create a correction invoice – changing the text snippet afterwards doesn't help.

8.11 Delete Text Snippet

Prerequisites

You can delete a text snippet at any time, even if it was used in documents.

[!] **Important:** Deletion is **permanent** and cannot be undone. Already published documents keep their text (since it was copied during publishing).

Perform Deletion

1. Click the **three-dot menu** to the right of the text snippet in the list
2. Select **Delete**
3. A confirmation dialog appears:

Delete text snippet?

“Delete ‘Payment Terms’? This action cannot be undone.”

- **Delete:** Confirm (red button)
- **Cancel:** Abort operation

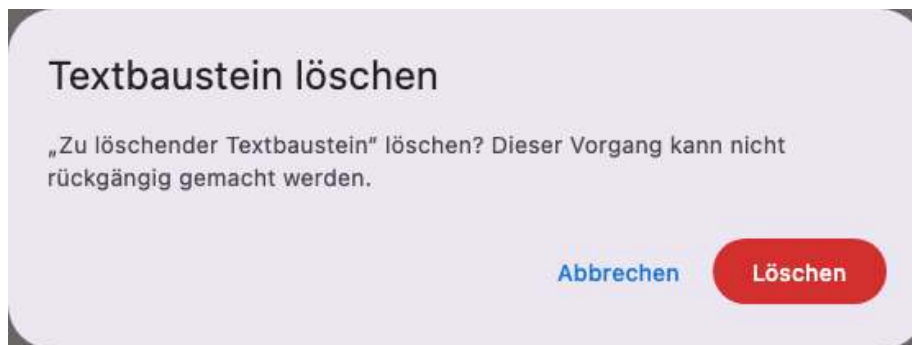


Figure 259: Confirmation dialog when deleting a text snippet

4. Confirm with **Delete**

What Happens When Deleting?

- The text snippet is removed from the list
- **New documents** can no longer use this text snippet
- **Drafts** (non-published documents) that use the text snippet keep it
- **Published documents** keep their text completely (since it was copied during publishing)

[i] **Pro Tip:** If you no longer want to use a text snippet but are unsure about deleting it, simply change the name to “[ARCHIVE] Payment Terms” – this way you immediately see it’s no longer active.

8.12 Insert Text Snippets into Documents

You can insert text snippets into invoices and quotes. Details can be found in **Chapter 3 – Documents** (Section 3.8 – Add Text Blocks).

Quick Overview

1. Open an invoice or quote (draft)
2. Scroll to the **Text Blocks** section
3. Click + **Add text block**
4. Select a text snippet from the list
5. Choose the position: **Before line items** or **After line items**
6. Save the invoice

Dokument bearbeiten

The screenshot shows a document editing interface. At the top, there is a text input field with the label 'Beschreibung' and the text 'Projektbegleitung November 2025'. Below this is a section titled 'Textbaustein einfügen' (Insert text block). This section contains two columns of text snippets. The left column is titled 'Zahlungshinweise' (Payment instructions) and contains the text 'Bitte überweise den Rechnungsbetrag innerhalb von 14 Tagen.' (Please transfer the invoice amount within 14 days). The right column is titled 'Lieferbedingungen' (Delivery conditions) and contains the text 'Lieferung erfolgt innerhalb von 10 Werktagen.' (Delivery takes place within 10 working days). At the bottom of this section is a blue button labeled 'In Dokument einfügen' (Insert into document).

Figure 260: Insert text snippet in invoice

Position “Before line items”: The text snippet appears **above** the line items table (ideal for payment terms, project descriptions).

Position “After line items”: The text snippet appears **below** the line items table and totals (ideal for terms & conditions, warranty information, delivery terms).



Figure 261: Text snippet before and after line items in PDF

[i] **Pro Tip:** You can insert **multiple text snippets** into a document – e.g., payment terms before line items and terms & conditions after line items.

8.13 Practical Workflows

Workflow 1: Create Standard Text Snippets (15–20 minutes, one-time)

Goal: Create the most important text snippets that you want to use in all invoices.

Steps:

1. **Create payment terms** (5 minutes)

- Click + **Create new text snippet**
- Name: “Payment Terms”
- Content:
Payment Terms:

Please transfer the invoice amount within 30 days, including the invoice

- Click **Create text snippet**

2. **Create terms and conditions** (5 minutes)

- Click + **Create new text snippet**
- Name: “Terms and Conditions”
- Content:
Terms and Conditions:

Our general terms and conditions apply, which you can view on our website

- Click **Create text snippet**

3. **Create delivery terms** (5 minutes)

- Click + **Create new text snippet**
- Name: “Standard Delivery Terms”
- Content:

****Delivery Terms:****

- Delivery within 10 business days after payment receipt
 - Shipping costs calculated separately
 - Partial deliveries possible
- Click **Create text snippet**

Result: You have three standard text snippets that you can insert into every invoice.

[*] **Workflow Tip:** Insert the text snippets directly into your next invoice to check how they look in the PDF – this way you can optimize formatting and wording.

Workflow 2: Create Multilingual Text Snippets (10–15 minutes)

Goal: Create German and English versions for international customers.

Steps:

1. **German payment terms** (3 minutes)

- Name: “Zahlungshinweise DE”
- Content:
****Zahlungshinweise:****

Bitte überweise den Rechnungsbetrag innerhalb von 30 Tagen unter Angabe

2. **English payment terms** (3 minutes)

- Name: “Payment Terms EN”
- Content:
****Payment Terms:****

Please transfer the invoice amount within 30 days, including the invoice

3. **German terms & conditions** (3 minutes)

- Name: “AGB DE”
- Content:
****Allgemeine Geschäftsbedingungen:****

Es gelten unsere AGB unter www.firma.de/agb.

4. **English terms & conditions** (3 minutes)

- Name: “Terms & Conditions EN”
- Content:
****Terms & Conditions:****

Our general terms and conditions apply, available at www.company.com/terms

Result: You have bilingual text snippets for German and international customers.

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use the language abbreviation (DE/EN) at the end of the name to immediately see which language the text snippet has in the list.

Workflow 3: Update Text Snippet (2–3 minutes)

Goal: Update an existing text snippet (e.g., change payment deadline).

Steps:

1. **Open text snippet** (30 seconds)
 - Open the text snippets list
 - Click on “Payment Terms”
2. **Change content** (1 minute)
 - Change “30 days” to “14 days”
 - New content:
Payment Terms:

Please transfer the invoice amount within **14 days**, including the inv

3. **Save** (10 seconds)
 - Click **Update text snippet**
4. **Check** (1 minute)
 - Create a new test invoice
 - Insert the updated text snippet
 - Check the preview

Result: All new invoices use the updated payment deadline (14 days).

[!] **Important:** Already published invoices keep the old payment deadline (30 days) – this is GoBD-compliant and prevents retroactive changes.

Workflow 4: Test Markdown Formatting (5 minutes)

Goal: Test various Markdown formatting to see how they look in the PDF.

Steps:

1. **Create test text snippet** (2 minutes)
 - Name: “Test Formatting”
 - Content:
Heading

This is **bold text** and this is *italic text*.

List:
- First point

- Second point
 - Subpoint A
 - Subpoint B

****Numbered List:****

1. First step
 2. Second step
 3. Third step
2. **Insert into invoice** (1 minute)
 - Create a test invoice
 - Insert the test text snippet
 3. **Check PDF preview** (2 minutes)
 - Open the preview/PDF
 - Check how the formatting looks
 - Adjust text snippet if needed and check again
 4. **Delete test text snippet** (30 seconds)
 - Delete the test text snippet after testing

Result: You know how various Markdown formatting looks in the PDF.

[i] **Pro Tip:** Don't save the test text snippet – create it again when needed to try different formatting.

8.14 Pro Tips for Text Snippets

[>] **Standard text snippets for all invoices:** Create at least “Payment Terms” and “Terms & Conditions” as text snippets – this saves time with every invoice.

[i] **Use language abbreviations in name:** Add “DE” or “EN” at the end of the name (e.g., “Payment Terms EN”, “Zahlungshinweise DE”) to easily distinguish multilingual text snippets.

[*] **Markdown preview in external editor:** Use dillinger.io or another Markdown editor with live preview for longer text snippets – then paste via copy & paste.

[!] **Bold text for headings:** Use ****Heading:**** instead of **###** Heading for small headings in text snippets – this often looks better on invoices.

[~] **Lists for structure:** Use lists (- or 1.) for clear presentation of conditions or steps – this increases readability.

[i] **Short and concise:** Keep text snippets short (max. 3–5 sentences or 5–7 list items) – too much text appears cluttered.

[*] **Group text snippets by position:** Use prefixes like “01 –” for text snippets that come before line items and “02 –” for text snippets after line items

– this keeps them sorted in the list.

[>] **Not too many text snippets:** Only create text snippets that you actually use multiple times – otherwise the list becomes confusing (5–10 text snippets are ideal).

[i] **Links as plain text:** Write URLs as plain text (`www.company.com/terms`) instead of as Markdown link (`[Link] (https://...)`) – links are not clickable on printed invoices.

[*] **Update regularly:** Review your text snippets every 6–12 months for currency (e.g., new payment deadlines, changed terms & conditions) – this keeps you legally compliant.

8.15 Auto-Assignment Rules

What Is Auto-Assignment?

Auto-assignment lets you define rules on a text snippet so that it is **automatically added** to new documents that match certain criteria, without you having to select it manually each time.

For example: “Always add the ‘Reverse Charge Note’ snippet to invoices for customers in the EU” – once the rule is set, this happens automatically whenever you create an invoice for a matching customer.

When Auto-Assignment Saves Time

- You have a standard payment-terms snippet that should go on every invoice you ever create
- You have a legal disclaimer that only applies to customers in a specific country
- You want a project description template pre-filled for a specific customer

Configuring Auto-Assignment on a Text Snippet

1. Open the text snippet you want to configure (create it first if needed)
2. Scroll to the **Auto-Assignment** section in the snippet edit form
3. Enable **Auto-assign to matching documents**
4. Configure the matching criteria:

← Textbaustein aktualisieren

Name *

Zahlungshinweise

Gilt für
Alle

Automatisch hinzufügen
Vor Positionen

Inhalt *

****Zahlungshinweise:****
Bitte überweise den Rechnungsbetrag innerhalb von 30 Tagen unter Angabe der Rechnungsnummer auf das angegebene Konto. Bei Fragen zur Rechnung stehen wir dir gerne zur Verfügung.

[Markdown-Formatierung wird unterstützt.](#)

Vorschau

Zahlungshinweise:
Bitte überweise den Rechnungsbetrag innerhalb von 30 Tagen unter Angabe der Rechnungsnummer auf das angegebene Konto. Bei Fragen zur Rechnung stehen wir dir gerne zur Verfügung.

Variablen

{DOCUMENT_NUMBER}
Belegnummer, so wie sie auf dem Dokument erscheint.

{DOCUMENT_DATE}
Belegdatum (lokalisiert).

Abbrechen

Textbaustein aktualisieren

Figure XX: Auto-assignment section in the text snippet editor

Matching Criteria

Criterion	Description
Customer	Only add to documents for a specific customer
Document type	Only add to invoices, or only to quotes, etc.
Tenant	Only add to documents from a specific tenant (company)
Position	Where in the document the snippet should be placed (before or after line items)

You can combine criteria. For example: “Add to invoices (type) for customer Acme (customer)” – the snippet will only be auto-added when both conditions are met.

Leave a criterion empty to match all values (e.g., leaving “Customer” empty means the snippet applies to documents for any customer).

How to Test That Auto-Assignment Works

1. Create a new document that should match the rule (correct type, correct customer, correct tenant)
2. Check the **Text blocks** section of the document – the snippet should already be present
3. If it is not there, revisit the rule criteria to verify they match the document you created

Disabling or Overriding Auto-Assignment on a Specific Document

Auto-assignment adds the snippet as a starting point, but you are always free to: - **Remove** the auto-assigned snippet from a specific document by clicking the X icon - **Add** additional snippets manually on top of the auto-assigned ones - **Reorder** snippets in the document

Removing a snippet from one document does not affect the rule – the snippet will still be auto-added to the next new document that matches.

If you want to permanently disable auto-assignment for a snippet, go back to the snippet and uncheck **Auto-assign to matching documents**.

Continue with **Chapter 9: Settings**

9. Settings

Settings allow you to customize the application to your preferences. Here you configure appearance, automatic backups, document export, and update notifications. All settings are saved immediately and restored on every start.

[>] **First time here? Start with the 5-minute setup.** If you're setting up AGYNAMIX Invoicer for the first time, jump directly to Section 9.13 Workflow 1: Initial Setup which guides you through the essential settings in order. Come back to this chapter for detailed reference on individual options.

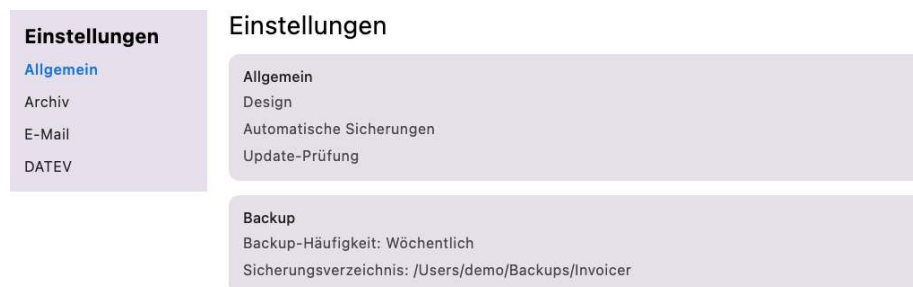


Figure 262: The settings overview shows all configuration options

9.1 Open Settings

You can open settings in two ways:

Way 1: Via Sidebar

1. Click **Settings** (gear icon) in the left sidebar



Figure 263: Settings link in the sidebar

Way 2: Via Menu Bar

1. Click **Edit** in the top menu bar
2. Select **Preferences** (or use the keyboard shortcut **Ctrl+, / Cmd+,**)



Figure 264: Open settings via menu bar

9.2 Settings Overview

Settings are divided into sections:

1. **Appearance:** Design (Light/Dark/System)
2. **Backup:** Automatic backups and retention
3. **Documents:** Storage location and file names
4. **Updates:** Automatic update checking
5. **Email:** Configure sending (SMTP) and sent-copy (IMAP)
6. **Document Emails:** Templates for document emails
7. **User Management:** Manage users, roles, and permissions (if enabled)
8. **Server:** Operating mode (Standalone/Host/Client) and server configuration

Einstellungen-Abschnitte



Figure 265: The settings sections

9.3 Appearance

Design Mode

Choose how the application should look: Light, Dark, or automatically adapted to your system settings.

Available options:

Option	Description	When to use?
System Default	Follows your operating system setting (Light/Dark)	Recommended – automatic adaptation
Dark Design	Application is always dark	For working in low light
Light Design	Application is always light	For working in daylight

Design

The screenshot shows three design options in a light gray menu:

- System Aktiv** (Ausgewählt) - This option is selected, indicated by the word 'Ausgewählt' on the right.
- Hell Verfügbar** (Wählen) - This option is available but not selected.
- Dunkel Verfügbar** (Wählen) - This option is available but not selected.

Figure 266: Choose between Light, Dark, and System Default

Select:

1. Click the radio button next to the desired option
2. The change is applied immediately (no save button needed)

Design

The screenshot shows the same three design options, but with a different selection:

- System Verfügbar** (Wählen) - This option is now available but not selected.
- Hell Verfügbar** (Wählen) - This option is available but not selected.
- Dunkel Aktiv** (Ausgewählt) - This option is now selected, indicated by the word 'Ausgewählt' on the right.

Änderung übernommen

Figure 267: The change is immediately visible

[i] Pro Tip: Use **System Default** so the application automatically switches between light and dark when you activate dark mode on your computer in the evening.

Light Design (Light Mode)

- Light background colors (White, Light Gray)
- Dark text colors (Black, Dark Gray)
- High contrast for daylight work

Hell

Vorschau

Rechnung RE-2025-001

TechVision GmbH

Offener Betrag: 1.240,00 EUR

Figure 268: Light design (Light Mode)

Dark Design (Dark Mode)

- Dark background colors (Dark Gray, Black)
- Light text colors (White, Light Gray)
- Easy on the eyes in low light

Dunkel

Vorschau

Rechnung RE-2025-001

TechVision GmbH

Offener Betrag: 1.240,00 EUR

Figure 269: Dark design (Dark Mode)

[!] **Important:** The design setting only affects **the application itself**, not the exported PDF documents. PDFs always have a light design for optimal readability when printing.

9.4 Backup

Why Backups Are Important

Backups protect your data from: - Accidental deletion - Hard drive failure
- Software problems - Unwanted changes

[i] **Pro Tip:** Enable **Daily** or **Weekly** to automatically create backups – this way you're always on the safe side.

Frequency

Determine how often automatic backups are created.

Available options:

Option	Description	Recommendation
None	No automatic backups	[!] Not recommended – only for test environments
Always (on every exit)	Every time you exit the application	For very important data
Daily	Once per day on exit	[*] Recommended for normal use
Weekly	Once per week on exit	For occasional use
Monthly	Once per month on exit	For rare use

Automatische Sicherungen

Automatische Sicherungen werden jeden Montag um 08:00 Uhr erstellt.

Figure 270: Choose backup frequency

Select:

1. Click the **Frequency** dropdown menu
2. Select an option from the list
3. The setting is saved immediately

Automatische Sicherungen

Figure 271: Dropdown menu for backup frequency

[i] **Pro Tip:** For active use (several invoices daily), **Daily** is recommended – for occasional use (1–2 invoices per week), **Weekly** is sufficient.

Backup Directory

Choose the folder where backup files are stored.

Default: Empty (no backups)

Select:

1. Click **Choose directory**
2. A file selection dialog opens
3. Navigate to the desired folder (e.g., ~/Backups/Invoicer/)
4. Click **Select folder**
5. The path is displayed in the text field



Figure 272: Choose the folder for backups

Recommended storage locations:

- **Cloud folder:** ~/Dropbox/Backups/Invoicer/ or ~/Google Drive/Backups/Invoicer/ (automatically backed up to cloud)
- **External drive:** /Volumes/Backup/Invoicer/ (additional security)
- **Local folder:** ~/Documents/Invoicer-Backups/ (fast, but local only)

Backup



/Users/demo/Backups/Invoicer

Figure 273: The selected path is displayed

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use a cloud folder (Dropbox, Google Drive, iCloud) for double security – if your computer fails, the backups are available in the cloud.

[!] **Important:** The backup directory must have sufficient storage space (at least 500 MB for ~100 backups with an average of 5 MB per backup).

Backup Retention

Determine how long old backups are kept before being automatically deleted.

Available options:

Option	Description	Recommendation
Keep	Backups are never deleted	[!] Caution – storage space can run out
1 Day	Backups older than 1 day are deleted	Only for daily backups with limited storage
1 Week	Backups older than 1 week are deleted	For weekly backups
1 Month	Backups older than 1 month are deleted	[*] Recommended for daily backups
1 Year	Backups older than 1 year are deleted	For maximum security

Backup

Sicherungsaufbewahrung
90 Tage

Alte Sicherungen werden nach Ablauf der Aufbewahrung automatisch gelöscht.

Figure 274: Choose retention period

Select:

1. Click the **Backup Retention** dropdown menu
2. Select an option from the list
3. The setting is saved immediately

Backup

Sicherungsaufbewahrung
90 Tage

30 Tage
90 Tage
365 Tage

Alte Sicherungen werden nach Ablauf der Aufbewahrung automatisch gelöscht.

Figure 275: Dropdown menu for retention period

[i] **Pro Tip:** For daily backups, **1 Month** is recommended – this gives you up to 30 backups to choose from if you need to restore something, without taking up too much storage space.

Note Text

“Backups are automatically created when closing the application and saved in the specified folder”

When are backups created?

Backups are automatically created when you: 1. Close the application (via **File** → **Exit** or the close button) 2. The backup frequency is met (e.g., daily → 1 day has passed since last backup)

Backup file name:

Backups have the following format:

`invoicer- $\{$ production|sandbox $\}$ -YYYY-MM-DD-HHMMSS.zip`

Example: `invoicer-production-2025-11-16-143522.zip`

Backup-Dateien im Sicherungsverzeichnis

```
/Users/demo/Backups/Invoicer
Wöchentliches Backup
├─ invoicer-backup-2026-03-16.zip
├─ invoicer-backup-2026-03-09.zip
├─ manifest.json
└─ README.txt
```

Figure 276: Backup files in backup directory

[!] **Important:** If the application crashes (e.g., power failure), no backup is created. Use regular backups to minimize data loss.

Backup Reminder on Exit

If you have **not configured automatic backups** (Frequency = **None**), a reminder dialog appears when exiting the application:

Create backup?

“You have not configured automatic backups. Do you want to create a backup before closing?”

- **Continue:** Create backup
- **Skip:** Exit without backup
- **Don't ask again:** Don't show this dialog again (checkbox)

```
Backup-Erinnerung
Letzte Sicherung vor 14 Tagen
Erstelle jetzt ein neues Backup, damit deine Daten geschützt bleiben.
Jetzt Backup erstellen Später erinnern
```

Figure 277: Reminder when exiting without automatic backups

[i] **Pro Tip:** If you activated the **Don't ask again** checkbox and want to re-enable the reminder, you can currently only do this by resetting all settings (see Section 9.12).

Encrypted Backups

For additional security – especially when backups are stored in cloud services or shared locations – you can create **encrypted backups**. An en-

encrypted backup is a password-protected ZIP file that cannot be opened without the passphrase.

Create an Encrypted Backup

1. Go to **File** → **Create Backup...** (or wait for the automatic backup on exit)
2. In the backup dialog, enable the **Encrypt backup** option
3. Enter a **passphrase** in the field provided
4. Confirm the passphrase in the second field
5. Click **Create Backup**

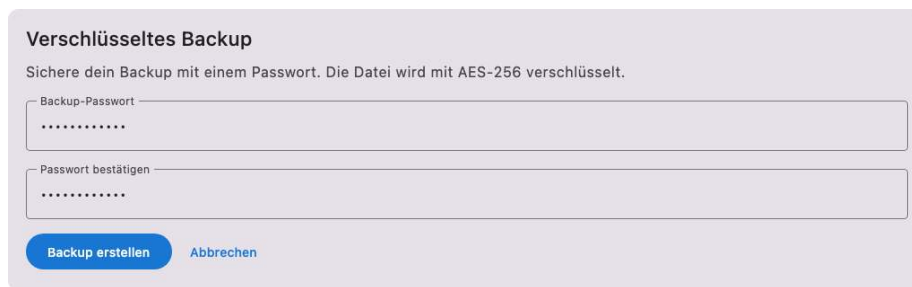


Figure XX: The backup dialog with the encryption option enabled

[!] **Important – store your passphrase safely:** If you lose the passphrase, the encrypted backup **cannot be restored**. Write it down and keep it in a secure place (e.g., a password manager or a printed note in a locked drawer).

Restore an Encrypted Backup

1. Go to **File** → **Restore from Backup...**
2. Select the encrypted backup file (.zip)
3. The application detects that the backup is encrypted and asks for the passphrase
4. Enter the passphrase
5. Click **Restore**

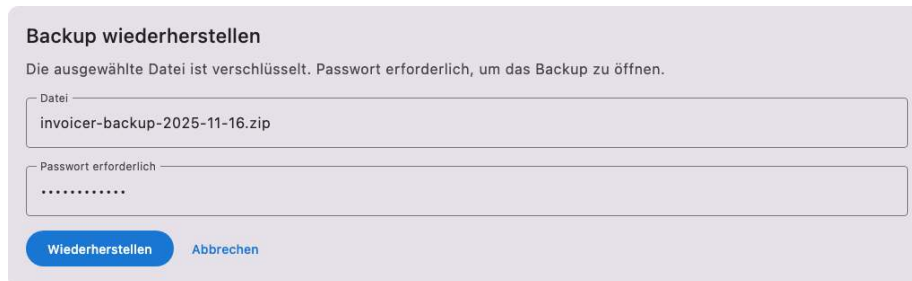


Figure XX: The restore dialog asking for the passphrase

When to Use Encrypted Backups

Storage Location	Recommendation
Local hard drive (home computer, not shared)	Encryption optional
Cloud storage (Dropbox, Google Drive, iCloud)	Encryption recommended
NAS or shared network drive	Encryption recommended
USB stick / external drive (portable, can be lost)	Encryption strongly recommended

[i] **Security tip:** Encrypted backups offer peace of mind when backups are stored off-device. Even if someone gains access to the storage, they cannot read your business data without the passphrase.

9.5 Documents

Document Folder

Choose the main folder where all exported PDFs and HTMLs are stored.

Default: Empty (no export possible)

Select:

1. Click **Choose directory**
2. A file selection dialog opens
3. Navigate to the desired folder (e.g., ~/Documents/Invoicer/Invoices/)
4. Click **Select folder**
5. The path is displayed in the text field

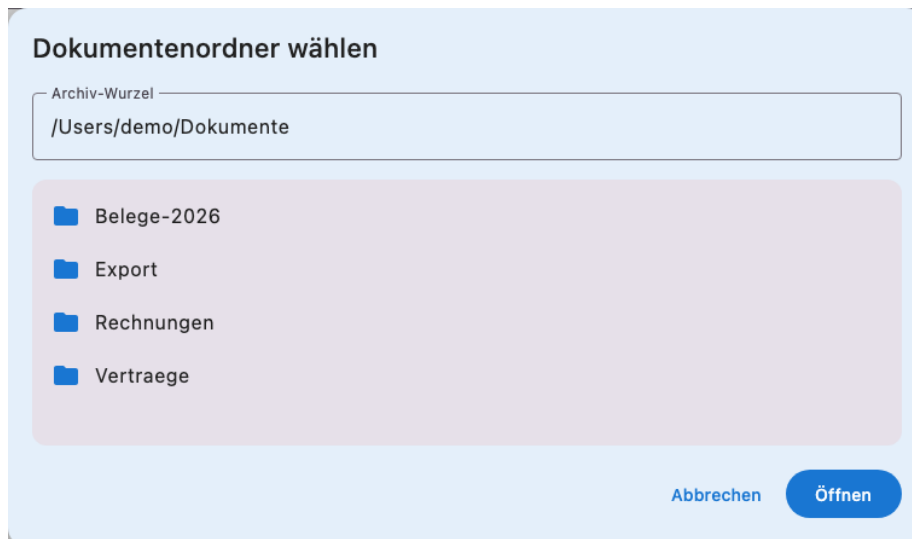


Figure 278: Choose the main folder for documents

Recommended storage locations:

- **Cloud folder:** ~/Dropbox/Invoices/ (automatically backed up to cloud)
- **Local folder:** ~/Documents/Invoices/ (fast, but local only)
- **External drive:** /Volumes/Data/Invoices/ (additional security)

Lokale Konfiguration

Hauptordner für das GoBD-konforme Dokumentenarchiv. Wähle ein leeres Verzeichnis aus oder erstelle ein neues.



Figure 279: The selected path is displayed

Note text: “Main folder where all generated documents are saved”

[i] Pro Tip: Use a folder in your cloud (Dropbox, Google Drive) so your invoices are automatically backed up and accessible from anywhere.

[!] Important: You **must** choose a document folder before you can export PDFs. Without a document folder, an error message appears on export:

Document settings missing

“The document folder has not been configured. Please configure the settings before exporting.”

- **Open Settings:** Opens the settings page



Figure 280: Error message on export without document folder

Document Name Pattern (optional)

Determine how exported PDF files are named and organized.

Default: Empty (standard naming: `{document_type}_{document_number}`)

Available parameters:

You can use the following placeholders to dynamically generate file names:

Parameter	Description	Example
<code>{tenant}</code>	Company name of the tenant	TechVision_GmbH
<code>{customer}</code>	Company name of the customer	Doe_GmbH
<code>{year}</code>	Year (4 digits)	2025
<code>{month}</code>	Month (2 digits)	11
<code>{day}</code>	Day (2 digits)	16
<code>{date}</code>	Full date (YYYYMMDD)	20251116
<code>{document_type}</code>	Document type	Invoice, Quote, Reminder
<code>{document_number}</code>	Document number	RE-2025-1, Q-2025-1

Namensmuster für Dokumente (optional)

Ermöglicht benutzerdefinierte Benennung für exportierte Dokumente.

Verfügbare Parameter: `{tenant}`, `{customer}`, `{year}`, `{month}`, `{day}`, `{date}`, `{document_type}`, `{document_number}`

Beispielmuster: `{date}_{document_type}_{document_number}_{tenant}`

Ergebnis: 20251116_Rechnung_RE-2025-1_MeineFirma.pdf

`{customer}/Rechnungen/{date}_{document_type}_{document_number}_{tenant}`

Figure 281: Enter a document name pattern

Note text:

“Pattern for organizing documents. If empty, files are named as `{document_type}_{document_number}` (Invoice_RE-2025-1.pdf)

Available parameters: {tenant}, {customer}, {year}, {month}, {day}, {date}, {document_type}, {document_number}

Example pattern: {customer}/Invoices/{date}_{document_type}_{document_number}_{document_type}_{document_number}
Result: Doe_GmbH/Invoices/20251116_Invoice_RE-2025-1_MyCompany.pdf”

Placeholder: “Leave empty for default: {document_type}_{document_number}”

Examples for Document Name Patterns

Example 1: Default (leave empty) Pattern: (empty)

Result:

Invoice_RE-2025-1.pdf
Quote_Q-2025-1.pdf
Reminder_M-2025-1-L1.pdf

Namensmuster für Dokumente (optional)

Ermöglicht benutzerdefinierte Benennung für exportierte Dokumente.

Verfügbare Parameter: {tenant}, {customer}, {year}, {month}, {day}, {date}, {document_type}, {document_number}

Beispielmuster: {date}_{document_type}_{document_number}_{tenant}

Ergebnis: 20251116_Rechnung_RE-2025-1_MeineFirma.pdf

Leer lassen für Standard: {document_type}_{document_number}

Ergebnis

Rechnung_RE-2025-1.pdf
Angebot_Q-2025-1.pdf
Mahnung_M-2025-1-L1.pdf

Figure 282: Default document names

Example 2: Organized by customer Pattern: {customer}/{document_type}_{document_number}

Result:

Doe_GmbH/Invoice_RE-2025-1.pdf
Doe_GmbH/Quote_Q-2025-1.pdf
Acme_Corporation/Invoice_RE-2025-2.pdf

Folder structure:

```
Document folder/  
├── Doe_GmbH/  
│   ├── Invoice_RE-2025-1.pdf  
│   └── Quote_Q-2025-1.pdf  
└── Acme_Corporation/
```

└─ Invoice_RE-2025-2.pdf

Namensmuster für Dokumente (optional)

Ermöglicht benutzerdefinierte Benennung für exportierte Dokumente.

Verfügbare Parameter: {tenant}, {customer}, {year}, {month}, {day}, {date}, {document_type}, {document_number}

Beispielmuster: {date}_{document_type}_{document_number}_{tenant}

Ergebnis: 20251116_Rechnung_RE-2025-1_MeineFirma.pdf

{customer}/{document_type}_{document_number}

Ergebnis

Mustermann_GmbH/Rechnung_RE-2025-1.pdf
Mustermann_GmbH/Angebot_Q-2025-1.pdf
Acme_Corporation/Rechnung_RE-2025-2.pdf

Ordnerstruktur

Dokumentenordner/
└─ Mustermann_GmbH/
│ └─ Rechnung_RE-2025-1.pdf
│ └─ Angebot_Q-2025-1.pdf
└─ Acme_Corporation/
└─ Rechnung_RE-2025-2.pdf

Figure 283: Documents sorted by customer

[i] Pro Tip: Ideal if you want all documents (invoices, quotes, reminders) for each customer in one place.

Example 3: Organized by year and document type Pattern:
{year}/{document_type}/{document_number}_{customer}

Result:

2025/Invoice/RE-2025-1_Doe_GmbH.pdf
2025/Invoice/RE-2025-2_Acme_Corporation.pdf
2025/Quote/Q-2025-1_Doe_GmbH.pdf

Folder structure:

Document folder/
└─ 2025/
│ └─ Invoice/
│ │ └─ RE-2025-1_Doe_GmbH.pdf
│ │ └─ RE-2025-2_Acme_Corporation.pdf
│ └─ Quote/
│ └─ Q-2025-1_Doe_GmbH.pdf

Namensmuster für Dokumente (optional)

Ermöglicht benutzerdefinierte Benennung für exportierte Dokumente.

Verfügbare Parameter: {tenant}, {customer}, {year}, {month}, {day}, {date}, {document_type}, {document_number}

Beispielmuster: {date}_{document_type}_{document_number}_{tenant}

Ergebnis: 20251116_Rechnung_RE-2025-1_MeineFirma.pdf

```
{year}/{document_type}/{document_number}_{customer}
```

Ergebnis

```
2025/Rechnung/RE-2025-1_Mustermann_GmbH.pdf
2025/Rechnung/RE-2025-2_Acme_Corporation.pdf
2025/Angebot/Q-2025-1_Mustermann_GmbH.pdf
```

Ordnerstruktur

```
Dokumentenordner/
├── 2025/
│   ├── Rechnung/
│   │   ├── RE-2025-1_Mustermann_GmbH.pdf
│   │   └── RE-2025-2_Acme_Corporation.pdf
│   └── Angebot/
│       └── Q-2025-1_Mustermann_GmbH.pdf
```

Figure 284: Documents sorted by year and type

[i] Pro Tip: Ideal for year-end closing and archiving – all invoices for a year are in one folder.

Example 4: With full date Pattern: {customer}/Invoices/{date}_{document_type}_{document_number}_{tenant}

Result:

```
Doe_GmbH/Invoices/20251116_Invoice_RE-2025-1_TechVision_GmbH.pdf
```

```
Doe_GmbH/Invoices/20251117_Invoice_RE-2025-2_TechVision_GmbH.pdf
```

```
Acme_Corporation/Invoices/20251116_Invoice_RE-2025-3_TechVision_GmbH.pdf
```

Namensmuster für Dokumente (optional)

Ermöglicht benutzerdefinierte Benennung für exportierte Dokumente.

Verfügbare Parameter: {tenant}, {customer}, {year}, {month}, {day}, {date}, {document_type}, {document_number}

Beispielmuster: {customer}/Rechnungen/{date}_{document_type}_{document_number}_{tenant}

Ergebnis: 20251116_Rechnung_RE-2025-1_MeineFirma.pdf

```
{customer}/Rechnungen/{date}_{document_type}_{document_number}_{tenant}
```

Ergebnis

```
Mustermann_GmbH/Rechnungen/20251116_Rechnung_RE-2025-1_TechVision_GmbH.pdf
Mustermann_GmbH/Rechnungen/20251117_Rechnung_RE-2025-2_TechVision_GmbH.pdf
Acme_Corporation/Rechnungen/20251116_Rechnung_RE-2025-3_TechVision_GmbH.pdf
```

Figure 285: Documents with full date

[i] **Pro Tip:** Ideal if you create multiple invoices per day – the date helps with chronological sorting.

Pattern Validation

The document name pattern **must contain both placeholders** `{document_type}` and `{document_number}`, otherwise an error message appears:

“Pattern must contain both placeholders `{document_type}` and `{document_number}`”

Namensmuster für Dokumente (optional)

Ermöglicht benutzerdefinierte Benennung für exportierte Dokumente.

Verfügbare Parameter: `{tenant}`, `{customer}`, `{year}`, `{month}`, `{day}`, `{date}`, `{document_type}`, `{document_number}`

Beispielmuster: `{date}_{document_type}_{document_number}_{tenant}`

Ergebnis: 20251116_Rechnung_RE-2025-1_MeineFirma.pdf

`{customer}/{date}`

Validierungsfehler

Muster muss beide Platzhalter `{document_type}` und `{document_number}` enthalten

Ergebnis

Ungültige Beispiele:

- `{customer}/{date}`
- `{year}/{month}/{customer}`

Figure 286: Error message for invalid pattern

Why?

These two placeholders are **mandatory** to guarantee unique file names. Without them, files could be overwritten.

Invalid examples: - `{customer}/{date}` (missing `{document_type}` and `{document_number}`) - `{year}/{month}/{customer}` (missing `{document_type}` and `{document_number}`)

Valid examples: - `{document_type}_{document_number}` (Minimal) - `{customer}/{document_type}_{document_number}` (With customer) - `{year}/{document_type}/{document_number}_{customer}` (With year and customer)

[i] **Pro Tip:** Test your pattern by exporting a test invoice – this way you immediately see if the folder structure fits.

Special Characters in Parameters

If company or customer names contain special characters (e.g., `&`, `/`, `\`), they are automatically replaced with underscores (`_`) to avoid file name errors.

Examples:

Original name	In file name
Miller & Co. GmbH	Miller___Co__GmbH
A/B Testing GmbH	A_B_Testing_GmbH
Tech\Vision	Tech_Vision

Sonderzeichen in Parametern

Sonderzeichen werden automatisch durch Unterstriche ersetzt, damit Dateinamen gültig bleiben.

Originalname	Im Dateinamen
Müller & Co. GmbH	Mueller___Co__GmbH
A/B Testing GmbH	A_B_Testing_GmbH
Tech\Vision	Tech_Vision

Figure 287: Special characters are replaced with underscores

GoBD Archive (Archive Root)

For GoBD functions such as **Audit log export**, **Z3 export**, and **DATEV export**, the application uses a separate document archive.

Setting: - **Archive Root:** Main folder for the GoBD-compliant document archive

Usage: 1. Open **Settings** 2. Find **Archive Root** 3. Click **Choose directory** 4. Select an empty directory (or create a new one)

Notes: - The archive folder uses a fixed, GoBD-compliant structure (tenant/year/month/...) - If you change the archive location, the application can migrate existing files or you can start fresh

Changing the archive location (Archive migration) If you change an **Archive Root** that has already been used, the application can offer a migration.

Dialog title: Archive Location Changed

Options in the dialog: - **Move Files:** Copies the existing archive files to the new location (progress is shown in the dialog **Migrating Archive**).
- **Start Fresh:** Keeps existing files at the old location and uses the new location for future exports.

Note: - If there is not enough disk space, the application disables **Move Files** and shows a corresponding warning.

[i] **Tip:** Place the archive root on storage that is backed up regularly (e.g., NAS/backup drive).

Write Protection (WORM)

Write protection (WORM = *Write Once Read Many*) protects archived files from accidental modifications.

Setting: - **Write protection (WORM):** If enabled, archived documents are set to read-only after export

Important notes: - Enabling/disabling can lock/unlock existing archive files and is recorded in the audit log - If write protection is disabled, you are responsible for storing archived documents in an immutable way

[!] **Important:** Before enabling, verify that your archive storage supports meaningful write protection.

DATEV (Booking Batch Export)

For the DATEV export (File → Export DATEV (Buchungsstapel) . . .), DATEV parameters must be configured in settings.

Settings (DATEV): - **Advisor number:** DATEV number of your tax advisor (a default value may be possible) - **Client number:** Provided by your tax advisor (required for export) - **Revenue account:** Default account for postings (e.g., 8400/8300) - **Export encoding:** Character encoding for the export file (ISO-8859-1 for older DATEV versions) - **Fiscal year start:** Start of your fiscal year (often January 1st)

Why fiscal year start matters: - The export period must not span across two fiscal years. The application uses this setting to validate your selection.

S3-Compatible Archive Storage

As an alternative to the local filesystem, you can configure an **S3-compatible storage backend** for the GoBD archive. This is useful if you have a NAS with S3 support or want to use a cloud object storage service for compliance purposes.

[i] **Recommendation:** Test your configuration with a non-production document first, then verify the archive files are visible in your S3 bucket before relying on this setup in production.

When to Consider S3 Storage

- You have a **NAS device** (e.g., Synology, QNAP) that exposes an S3-compatible API
- Your organization requires **off-site archiving** in cloud object storage
- You want the archive to be accessible from multiple computers

Configuration Fields To enable the S3 backend, open **Settings → Documents → Archive Backend** and select **S3 Compatible**:

Field	Description
Endpoint URL	URL of the S3-compatible service (e.g., <code>https://s3.eu-central-1.amazonaws.com</code> or your NAS address)
Bucket name	The name of the S3 bucket to use for the archive
Access key	S3 access key ID
Secret key	S3 secret access key
Region	Region of the bucket (e.g., <code>eu-central-1</code> ; may be optional for self-hosted services)

S3-kompatibler Archivspeicher

Konfiguration des S3-kompatiblen Archiv-Backends für externe oder NAS-basierte Archivierung.

Endpoint-URL
https://s3.eu-central-1.amazonaws.com

Bucket-Name
invoicer-archiv

Region
eu-central-1

Access Key
AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE

Secret Key
.....

Objekt-Lock aktiv
Aufbewahrung: 10 Jahre, Compliance-Modus

Verbindung testen

Figure XX: S3-compatible archive backend configuration

[i] Recommendation: Test your configuration with a non-production document first, then verify the archive files are visible in your S3 bucket before relying on this setup.

9.6 Updates

Automatically Check for Updates

Enable or disable automatic update checking on application start.

Default: Enabled (recommended)

Enable/Disable:

1. Click the **switch** next to “Automatically check for updates”
2. The setting is saved immediately

Updates

Beim Start automatisch nach neuen Anwendungsversionen suchen

Automatisch nach Updates suchen

Empfohlen, damit wichtige Bugfixes und neue Funktionen nicht verpasst werden.



Figure 288: Enable or disable automatic update checking

Note text: “Automatically check for new application versions on startup”

What Happens with Update Checking Enabled?

1. **On startup**, the application checks in the background if a new version is available
2. **If a new version is available**, a notification appears: > **Update available**
> “A new version (v1.2.0) is available. Do you want to download it now?” > > - **Download:** Opens the download page > - **Later:** Close dialog



Figure 289: Notification when update is available

3. **If no new version is available**, no notification appears (silent check)

[i] **Pro Tip:** Keep automatic update checking enabled to not miss important bug fixes or new features.

Manual Update Check

You can manually check for updates at any time:

1. Click **Help** in the top menu bar
2. Select **Check for updates**
3. A dialog shows the result:
 - **Update available:** Shows version number and download link
 - **No updates:** “You are using the latest version”

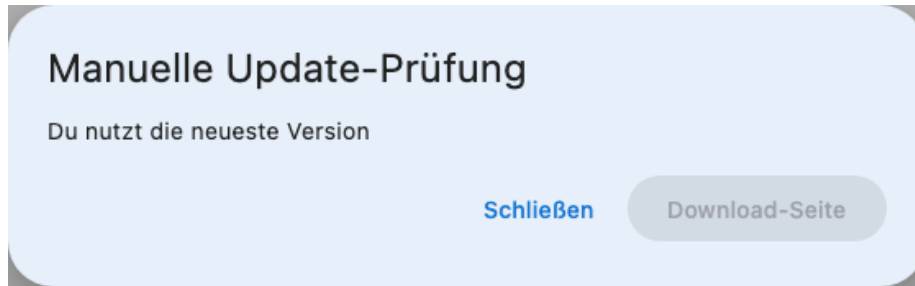


Figure 290: Manual update check via Help menu

9.7 Email

This section covers the application-wide configuration for sending emails.

[!] **Important:** To send documents via email from Invoicer, you must configure an email sending method first.

SMTP (Outgoing Mail)

Use SMTP settings to define how Invoicer sends outgoing emails.

Typical settings include: - SMTP server/host and port - Security (e.g., TLS/STARTTLS) - Authentication (username/password) - Sender name and sender email address

SMTP

Einstellungen für ausgehende E-Mails.

Absendename TechVision GmbH		Absenderadresse billing@techvision.example	
Host smtp.mailbox.org	Port 587	Sicherheit STARTTLS	
Benutzername billing@techvision.example			
Passwort			
SMTP testen			

Figure 291a: SMTP settings for outgoing mail

IMAP (Copy to Sent Folder)

If enabled, Invoicer can copy the sent email to your mail account's **Sent** folder via IMAP.

Typical settings include: - IMAP server/host and port - Security (TLS) - Authentication - Sent folder name/path (provider-specific)

IMAP

Kopie in den Gesendet-Ordner nach erfolgreichem Versand.

Kopie nach Gesendet

Gesendete Nachrichten werden zusätzlich im Mailkonto gespeichert.



Host imap.mailbox.org	Port 993	Sicherheit TLS
Benutzername billing@techvision.example		
Gesendet-Ordner Gesendet		
Erkannte Ordner Gesendet Sent Sent Items		

Figure 291b: IMAP settings for copying to the Sent folder

[i] Pro Tip: If your provider uses a non-standard Sent folder name, you may need to enter it exactly as shown by your mail client (e.g., “Sent”, “Gesendet”, “Sent Items”).

Test Configuration

Use the test actions in this settings section to validate your configuration before you start sending real documents.

9.8 Document Emails

Document emails are based on templates so you don't have to rewrite the subject and message body for every document.

Templates (Subject & Body)

You can define: - A **subject template** - A **body template** (Markdown)

Templates can contain **tokens/placeholders** that are replaced with real values (e.g., customer name, document number).

Dokument-E-Mail-Vorlagen

Vorlagen für Betreff und Nachrichtentext mit Token-Unterstützung.

Betreff

Deine Rechnung {document_number}

Nachrichtentext (Markdown)

Hallo {customer_name},

anbei findest du {document_type_label} {document_number}.

Viele Grüße
{tenant}

Verfügbare Token

- {customer_name}
- {document_number}
- {document_type_label}
- {tenant}

Vorschau

Figure 291c: Edit subject and body templates

Token List and Insertion

Invoicer provides a token list. You can insert tokens into the last active input field (subject or body).

[!] **Important:** Unknown tokens are shown as warnings. Fix them before sending to avoid placeholders leaking to the customer.

Preview

Use **Preview** to render the final email (including token replacement) before sending.

Language Variants

You can maintain language-specific templates (e.g., German/English) so customers receive emails matching their document language.

9.9 User Management

If enabled for your installation and your account has the required permissions, you can manage users and roles.

Typical actions: - Create users - Assign roles/permissions - Set or clear passwords - Delete users (with confirmation)

Benutzerverwaltung

Benutzer, Rollen und Berechtigungen verwalten.

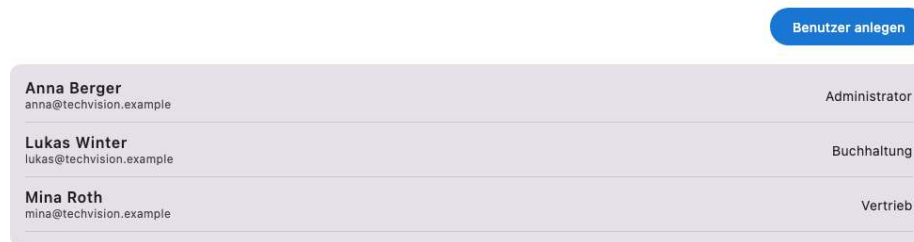


Figure 291d: User management screen

9.10 Error Handling

If an error occurs while saving settings, an error message appears above the settings card.

Example:

Error saving settings

“Settings could not be saved. Please try again.”

- **Try again:** Retry
- **x:** Close error message

Einstellungen

Fehlerbehandlung bei Speicherproblemen.

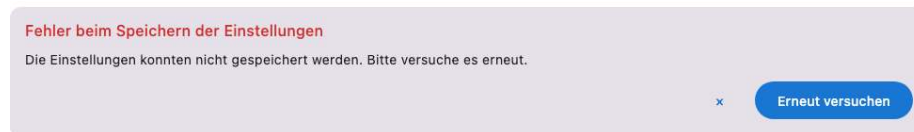


Figure 291: Error message for save problems

[i] **Pro Tip:** If save errors occur, check whether the application has write permissions for the database file: - **Linux:** `chmod +w ~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db` - **macOS:** `chmod +w ~/Library/Application\ Support/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db`

9.11 Discard Invalid Settings

If you enter invalid settings (e.g., a document name pattern without {document_type} and {document_number}), a dialog appears when leaving the settings page:

Invalid settings

“The document name pattern contains validation errors. Do you want to discard the invalid settings?”

- **Discard invalid settings:** Undo changes
- **Continue editing:** Stay in form



Figure 292: Dialog for invalid settings

[i] **Pro Tip:** Choose **Discard invalid settings** to automatically return to the last valid configuration.

9.12 Reset Settings

There is currently no one-click “reset all settings” button in the user interface.

If you need to reset your settings, please contact support:

Email: support@agynamix.de

Subject: “Settings Reset Request”

Please include your operating system and application version (see **Help → About**) so support can assist you quickly.

[!] **Note:** Resetting settings requires access to the internal database and is not something we recommend users attempt manually, as an incorrect change could affect your invoice data. Our support team can guide you safely.

9.13 Practical Workflows

Workflow 1: Initial Setup (5–10 minutes, one-time)

Goal: Configure all important settings for optimal use.

Steps:

1. **Choose design** (30 seconds)
 - Open Settings
 - Choose **System Default** (recommended)
2. **Configure backup** (3 minutes)
 - Frequency: **Daily** (recommended)
 - Backup directory: Choose a cloud folder (e.g., ~/Dropbox/Backups/Invoicer/)
 - Backup retention: **1 Month** (recommended)
3. **Choose document folder** (2 minutes)
 - Document folder: Choose a cloud folder (e.g., ~/Dropbox/Invoices/)
4. **Document name pattern (optional)** (2 minutes)
 - If desired: {customer}/Invoices/{document_type}_{document_number}
 - Otherwise: Leave empty (default)
5. **Enable updates** (10 seconds)
 - Automatically check for updates: **Enabled** (recommended)

Result: All settings are configured, automatic backups are enabled, documents are saved in the cloud.

[i] **Pro Tip:** Test the backup immediately by closing the application and checking in the backup directory if a backup file was created.

Workflow 2: Backup Strategy for Important Data (10 minutes)

Goal: Maximum data security through cloud backups and local copies.

Steps:

1. **Configure cloud backup** (3 minutes)
 - Open Settings
 - Frequency: **Daily**
 - Backup directory: ~/Dropbox/Backups/Invoicer/ (or Google Drive)
 - Backup retention: **1 Month**
2. **Local backup to external drive** (5 minutes)
 - Close the application
 - Open **File** → **Create Backup...**
 - Choose a folder on an external drive (e.g., /Volumes/Backup/Invoicer/)
 - Save the backup
3. **Document backup plan** (2 minutes)
 - Note:
 - Cloud backup: Daily automatic

- External drive: Monthly manual (e.g., on the 1st of each month)

Result: You have double security – automatic cloud backups (daily) and manual backups on external drive (monthly).

[*] **Workflow Tip:** Create a calendar entry “Invoicer Backup” on the 1st of each month as a reminder for the manual backup to external drive.

Workflow 3: Document Organization by Customer (5 minutes)

Goal: All documents for a customer in one folder.

Steps:

1. **Choose document folder** (1 minute)
 - Open Settings
 - Document folder: ~/Documents/Invoices/
2. **Set document name pattern** (2 minutes)
 - Pattern: {customer}/{document_type}_{document_number}
3. **Export test invoice** (2 minutes)
 - Create a test invoice for customer “Doe GmbH”
 - Export as PDF
 - Check if folder ~/Documents/Invoices/Doe_GmbH/ was created

Result: All documents are organized by customer – each customer has their own folder.

Example folder structure:

```
~/Documents/Invoices/  
├── Doe_GmbH/  
│   ├── Invoice_RE-2025-1.pdf  
│   └── Quote_Q-2025-1.pdf  
└── Acme_Corporation/  
    └── Invoice_RE-2025-2.pdf
```

[i] **Pro Tip:** If you send documents to customers, you can simply send the entire customer folder as a ZIP archive (contains all invoices, quotes, etc.).

Workflow 4: Automatically Switch Design by Time of Day (1 minute)

Goal: Use light design during the day, automatically switch to dark design in the evening.

Steps:

1. **Enable system default** (30 seconds)
 - Open Settings
 - Design: Choose **System Default**
2. **Check operating system setting** (30 seconds)
 - macOS: **System Preferences** → **Appearance** → **Automatic**
 - Windows 10/11: **Settings** → **Personalization** → **Colors** → **Choose mode: Automatic**
 - Linux (GNOME): **Settings** → **Appearance** → **Automatic**

Result: The application automatically switches between light and dark depending on time of day (e.g., dark from 8 PM).

[i] **Pro Tip:** If your operating system doesn't support automatic switching, you can manually switch between light and dark in the application at any time.

9.14 Pro Tips for Settings

[>>] **Use system default for design:** Enable **System Default** instead of manually choosing Light/Dark – this way the application automatically switches with your operating system.

[i] **Daily backups in cloud:** Use **Daily** + cloud folder (Dropbox/Google Drive) for double security – this way your data is protected even if the hard drive fails.

[*] **Backup retention 1 month:** Use **1 Month** instead of “Keep” – this gives you enough backups to restore without taking up too much storage space.

[!] **Document folder before first export:** Configure the document folder **before** the first PDF export – otherwise an error message appears.

[~] **Document name pattern with customer:** Use `{customer}/{document_type}_{document_number}` for better organization – all documents for a customer are in one folder.

[i] **Date in file name for chronology:** If you create multiple invoices per day, use `{date}_{document_type}_{document_number}` for chronological sorting.

[*] **Keep update checking enabled:** Keep automatic update checking enabled to not miss bug fixes or new features.

[>>] **Don't disable backup reminder:** If you use “None” backups, don't disable the reminder – it protects against accidental data loss.

[i] **External drive for extra security:** Additionally create a manual backup to external drive monthly – this protects you in case of cloud outage or account problems.

[*] **Test document name pattern:** Test your pattern with a test invoice before exporting many documents – this avoids confusing folder structures.

9.15 Server (Operating Mode)

The **Server** section lets you configure how this installation operates in a multi-computer setup. You can switch between three operating modes:

- **Standalone** – single-machine setup (default). No network sharing.
- **Host (Server)** – this computer acts as the central server for other clients.
- **Client** – this computer connects to a host and synchronizes data from it.

To change the mode, click **Change Mode** and follow the wizard. The wizard guides you through each step, including entering the host URL and authentication token when switching to Client mode, or configuring the server bind address and port when switching to Host mode.

Note: Switching to Host mode requires an **Ultimate** license. Client mode does not require a license – the client inherits the host’s license tier.

For a full explanation of each mode, setup instructions, headless server operation, and troubleshooting, see Chapter 12: Operating Modes.

9.16 Admin Area

The **Admin** area is a dedicated section of the sidebar that gives you access to system-wide configurations affecting how documents are numbered and how taxes are calculated. Think of it as the “back office” of your Invoicer – settings you usually configure once at the start and only revisit when your business situation changes.

To open the Admin area, click **Admin** in the left sidebar.



Figure XX: Admin area in the sidebar

The Admin area has two sub-sections:

- **Tax Rules** – define which tax rates apply to which types of transactions and customers
- **Number Ranges** – control how document numbers are generated for each document type

9.17 Tax Rules

What Is a Tax Rule?

A **tax rule** is a named configuration that combines a tax rate with a description of when it applies. Unlike a bare tax rate (e.g., “19 %”), a tax rule explains the *purpose*: “Standard VAT (Germany, 19 %)”, “Reduced VAT (Germany, 7 %)”, or “Reverse Charge (EU B2B)”.

Using tax rules – rather than entering a percentage by hand each time – keeps your documents consistent and makes the logic transparent to you and any auditor reviewing your records.

Built-In Tax Presets

AGYNAMIX Invoicer ships with presets for the most common scenarios in the DACH region:

Country	Rule Name	Rate
Germany	Standard VAT	19 %
Germany	Reduced VAT	7 %
Austria	Standard VAT	20 %
Austria	Reduced VAT	10 %
Switzerland	Standard VAT	7.7 %
All	Tax-free / Exempt	0 %

These presets are shown in the **Tax Rules** list in the Admin area.

Steuerregeln
Verwalte Standard-, ermäßigte und steuerfreie Steuersätze für neue Dokumente.

[Steuerregel erstellen](#)

Name	Steuersatz	Verwendung
Standard 19 %	19,00 %	Rechnungen, Korrekturen
Ermäßigt 7 %	7,00 %	Bücher, Kultur
Steuerfrei EU	0,00 %	Inneregemeinschaftliche Leistungen

Figure XX: The tax rules list with built-in presets

Automatic Tax Selection Based on Customer Location

When you create a new line item in a document, AGYNAMIX Invoicer can automatically suggest the correct tax rule based on the customer's country. For example:

- Customer is in **Germany** → “Standard VAT (19 %)” is suggested
- Customer is in the **EU (business, VAT ID present)** → “Reverse Charge” is suggested
- Customer is **outside the EU** → “Tax-free / Export” is suggested

This automatic suggestion reduces errors and saves time, especially if you work with international customers.

Create a Custom Tax Rule

If none of the presets fit your situation (e.g., you sell digital services to EU consumers and need the customer’s local VAT rate), you can create your own rule:

1. In the Admin area, click **Tax Rules**
2. Click + **New**
3. Fill in the fields:
 - **Name:** A clear description (e.g., “Reverse Charge EU”)
 - **Tax rate:** The percentage (e.g., 0 for Reverse Charge)
 - **Note / label:** Optional text that appears on the invoice (e.g., “VAT liability transfers to the recipient”)
 - **Country / scope:** Which country or situation this rule applies to
4. Click **Save**

The screenshot shows a light blue dialog box titled "Steuerregel erstellen". It contains three text input fields with labels above them: "Name" (containing "Standard 19 %"), "Steuersatz" (containing "19,00 %"), and "Beschreibung" (containing "Regulärer Umsatzsteuersatz für Dienstleistungen"). At the bottom right, there are two buttons: "Abbrechen" (cancel) and "Speichern" (save).

Figure XX: Dialog for creating a custom tax rule

How Tax Rules Interact with Customers and Documents

- **On the Customer card:** You can set a *default tax rule* for a specific customer. This overrides the automatic suggestion when you create a document for that customer.
- **In a Document:** Each line item has its own tax rule, pre-filled from the customer default or the general suggestion. You can manually change it per line item.
- **On the PDF:** The tax breakdown on the printed invoice reflects exactly the rules used.

Common Scenarios in Plain Language

Situation	Which rule to use
German customer, standard goods/services	Standard VAT (Germany, 19 %)
German customer, food/books/cultural	Reduced VAT (Germany, 7 %)
Business customer in another EU country (has VAT ID)	Reverse Charge
Customer in a non-EU country	Tax-free / Export
Internal note line or deposit	Tax-free / Exempt

[i] **Pro Tip:** Set the default tax rule on each customer card once – you won't have to think about it when creating documents for that customer again.

[!] **Important:** Tax rules affect the amounts shown on legal documents. If you are unsure which rule applies to your situation, consult your tax advisor.

9.18 Number Ranges

What Are Number Ranges?

Every document in AGYNAMIX Invoicer receives a unique, sequential number (e.g., RE-2024-001). **Number Ranges** let you control the exact format and counter for each document type separately.

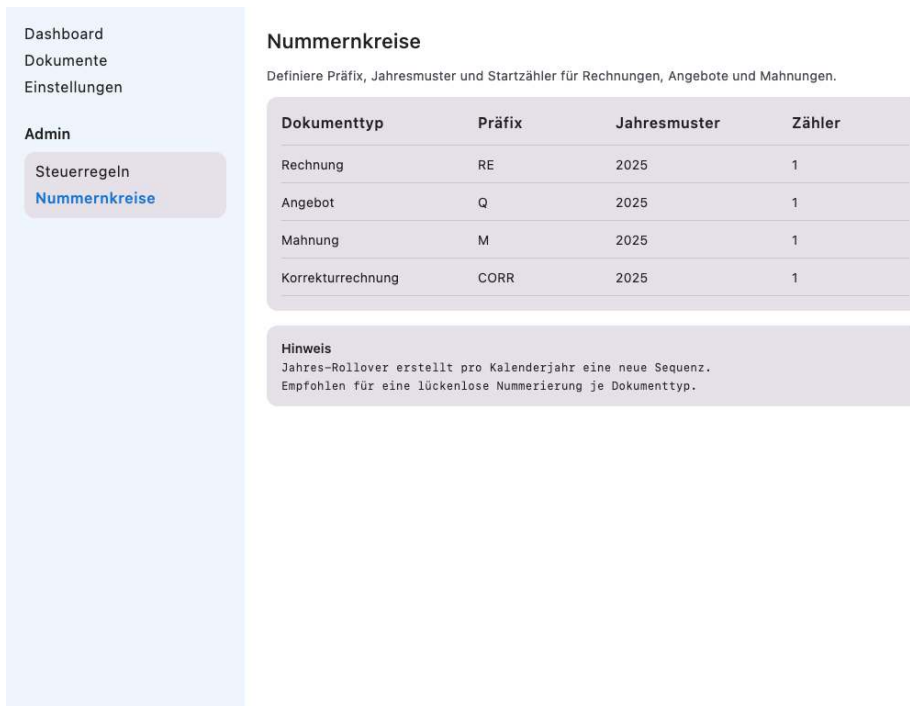
A number range defines:

- The **prefix** (e.g., RE for invoices, ANG for quotes)

- Whether and how the **year** is embedded in the number
- The **current counter** (starting point)
- Whether the counter **resets automatically at the start of each year**

Opening Number Ranges

1. Click **Admin** in the left sidebar
2. Click **Number Ranges**



Dokumenttyp	Präfix	Jahresmuster	Zähler
Rechnung	RE	2025	1
Angebot	Q	2025	1
Mahnung	M	2025	1
Korrekturrechnung	CORR	2025	1

Hinweis
 Jahres-Rollover erstellt pro Kalenderjahr eine neue Sequenz.
 Empfohlen für eine lückenlose Nummerierung je Dokumenttyp.

Figure XX: The Number Ranges screen with one range per document type

Document Types and Their Ranges

Each of the following document types has its own number range:

Document Type	Example Default Pattern
Invoice	RE- {year} - {counter}
Quote	ANG- {year} - {counter}
Payment Reminder	MAH- {year} - {counter}
Correction Invoice	KOR- {year} - {counter}

Fields of a Number Range

Field	Description
Prefix	Characters at the start of the number (e.g., RE)
Year pattern	How the year appears (e.g., {year} for 4 digits, {year2} for 2 digits, empty for no year)
Counter	The current number (increments with each new document)
Year rollover	If enabled, the counter resets to 1 at the start of each calendar year

Live Preview

As you change any field, a **live preview** shows exactly how the next document number will look (e.g., RE-2025-001). This helps you confirm the format before saving.

The screenshot shows the 'Nummernkreise' configuration page. On the left is a navigation menu with 'Dashboard', 'Dokumente', 'Einstellungen', and 'Admin'. Under 'Admin', 'Steuerregeln' and 'Nummernkreise' are listed. The main content area is titled 'Nummernkreise' and includes the instruction 'Definiere Präfix, Jahresmuster und Startzähler für Rechnungen, Angebote und Mahnungen.' Below this is a table with the following data:

Dokumenttyp	Präfix	Jahresmuster	Zähler
Rechnung	RE	2025	1
Angebot	Q	2025	1
Mahnung	M	2025	1
Korrekturrechnung	CORR	2025	1

Below the table is a 'Live-Vorschau' section showing the resulting document numbers:

```

Rechnung -> RE-2025-001
Angebot -> Q-2025-001
Mahnung -> M-2025-001-L1
Jahres-Rollover: aktiv

```

Figure XX: Live preview shows the resulting document number immediately

Year-End Rollover

Rollover enabled: At the start of each year, the counter automatically resets to 1. The first invoice of 2026 would be RE-2026-001 regardless of how many invoices you created in 2025.

Rollover disabled: The counter never resets. This gives you a single ascending sequence across all years (e.g., invoice 4,500 in year 3 of using the application).

Which to choose? Most users in the DACH region prefer rollover enabled, as it makes the year clearly visible in every invoice number and matches common bookkeeping conventions.

Best Practices for Naming Schemes

- **Keep prefixes short** (2–3 characters): RE not RECHNUNG
- **Include the year:** The year in the number makes it immediately clear which fiscal year a document belongs to
- **Start counters at 1** (or a round number like 1000 if you want to obscure volume)
- **Be consistent:** Once you publish documents under a scheme, avoid changing it mid-year

[!] Important: Consequences of Changing a Number Range

Once invoices have been published under a number scheme:

- Changing the prefix or year pattern will create a gap or inconsistency in the numbering sequence
- Under GoBD guidelines, invoice numbers must be sequential and gap-free
- **Recommendation:** Only change number ranges at the start of a new fiscal year, or before publishing the first document in a series

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use the live preview to double-check the format before saving – you cannot undo the counter value once it has been incremented by a published document.

Continue with **Chapter 10: GoBD Compliance**

10. GoBD Compliance

GoBD compliance (Principles for the proper management and storage of books, records, and documents in electronic form as well as for data access) is a central component of the application. It ensures that your business transactions are documented in accordance with the law, archived immutably, and can be traced at any time for tax audits.

In this chapter you will learn: - **What GoBD means** and why it's important - **Which requirements** the application fulfills - **How the audit log** works -

How to create exports for tax audits - How to verify the integrity of your data



Figure 293: GoBD compliance features protect your data

10.1 What Is GoBD?

Definition

GoBD are binding guidelines from the Federal Ministry of Finance for electronic bookkeeping. They regulate how companies and self-employed individuals must digitally store their business data so they are recognized under tax law.

Goal: Ensure that digital records are complete, correct, timely, traceable, and immutable.

Why Is GoBD Important?

During a tax audit (operational audit), you must be able to prove: - That all invoices were recorded correctly - That no invoices were changed retroactively - That all business transactions are completely documented - That data was archived tamper-proof

[!] **Important:** Violations of GoBD can lead to: - **Estimates** by the tax office (often to your disadvantage) - **Tax back payments** with interest - **Fines** for gross negligence

[i] **Pro Tip:** The application fulfills all GoBD requirements automatically – you don't need to worry about anything as long as you follow the rules in this chapter.

10.2 The Seven GoBD Principles

GoBD defines seven principles that your accounting system must fulfill:

1. Orderliness

Requirement: The system must be documented (process documentation).

How the application fulfills this: - This user manual serves as process documentation - All business processes are clearly defined - Changes are documented in the audit log

2. Completeness

Requirement: All business transactions must be recorded, no gaps in the audit log.

How the application fulfills this: - All invoices, quotes, payments are logged - Gap-free numbering (RE-2025-1, RE-2025-2, RE-2025-3, ...) - Deleted drafts are logged to avoid gaps

3. Accuracy

Requirement: Data must be correct and complete.

How the application fulfills this: - Validation of all required fields (customer, amount, date, tax number) - Automatic calculation of VAT - Source documents (PDFs) are stored unchanged

4. Timely Bookings and Records

Requirement: Business transactions must be recorded promptly.

How the application fulfills this: - Publication timestamp is set automatically - Audit log entries contain precise timestamps (millisecond accuracy) - No manual date changes possible

5. Immutability

Requirement: Original data may not be changed after publication.

How the application fulfills this: - **Published invoices are immutable** (Status: Published → no more editing) - Changes only via **correction invoices** (new invoice with negated line items) - Cryptographic hash chain prevents undetected manipulation

Unveränderbare Rechnung

Veröffentlichte Rechnungen dürfen nach GoBD nicht mehr bearbeitet werden.

RE-2025-42 Veröffentlicht
Kunde: MeineFirma GmbH

Betrag: 1.190,00 € Rechnungsdatum: 16.11.2025

Diese Rechnung wurde veröffentlicht und kann nicht mehr bearbeitet werden.

Bearbeiten

GoBD-Regel
Änderungen nur über Korrekturrechnung
Hash-Kette schützt vor stillen Manipulationen

Figure 294: Published invoices cannot be edited

[i] **Pro Tip:** If you discover an error in a published invoice, use **Create correction invoice** – this way the original invoice is preserved and the change is traceable.

6. Traceability

Requirement: Business transactions must be traceable from start to finish.

How the application fulfills this: - **Audit log** documents all status changes
- Transaction IDs link related events (e.g., invoice published + PDF exported) - Assignment to customers, tenants, periods

Prüfprotokoll-Einträge

Alle wesentlichen Geschäftsvorfälle werden unveränderbar gespeichert.

Sequenz 1234 · Rechnung veröffentlicht · max.mustermann · 16.11.2025 14:35:22

Sequenz 1235 · PDF exportiert · RE-2025-42.pdf · Hash d4e5f6...

Sequenz 1236 · Teilzahlung erfasst · 595,00 € · txn-001

Figure 295: The audit log shows all changes

7. Auditability

Requirement: Tax auditors must be able to review the data.

How the application fulfills this: - **Export function** for tax audits (CSV + PDFs) - **Verification function** checks data integrity - Access to SQLite database (if required by auditor)

10.3 The Audit Log

What Is the Audit Log?

The **audit log** is an immutable list of all business transactions in the application. It documents: - **Who** did **what when** - Which invoices were published, paid, canceled - Which PDFs were exported (with file hash) - Which payments were recorded

Storage location: Audit log database (SQLite). The database file is stored at: - **Linux:** `~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db`
- **macOS:** `~/Library/Application Support/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db` - **Windows:** `%LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\invoicer_db.db`

How Does the Audit Log Work?

Each business transaction is stored as an **audit log entry**:

Field	Description	Example
Sequence number	Sequential number (0, 1, 2, 3, ...)	42
Timestamp	Time of event (milliseconds)	2025-11-16 14:35:22.123
User	Who performed the action	john.doe
Tenant ID	Which tenant the transaction belongs to	tenant-123
Event type	Type of business transaction	Invoice published
Entity type	What was changed	Sales document
Entity ID	Unique ID of the object	doc-001
Document type	Invoice, Quote, Reminder, ...	Invoice
Document number	Invoice number	RE-2025-1
State before	Previous status	Draft
State after	New status	Published
Description	Readable description	"Invoice published"
Event data	Additional information (JSON)	{"total_amount_cents": 119000}
Previous hash	Hash of previous entry	a1b2c3d4e5f6...
Current hash	Hash of this entry	b2c3d4e5f6a7...

Prüfprotokoll-Einträge-Tabelle
Beispielhafte Felder eines Audit-Log-Eintrags.

Sequenznummer	Zeitstempel	Event	Dokument
1234	2025-11-16 14:35:22.123	Rechnung veröffentlicht	RE-2025-42
1235	2025-11-16 14:35:24.010	PDF exportiert	RE-2025-42
1236	2025-11-18 09:12:11.004	Teilzahlung erfasst	RE-2025-42

Figure 296: Example entries in audit log

Cryptographic Hash Chain

Each audit log entry contains a **cryptographic hash** (SHA-256) that is calculated from: 1. All important fields of the entry (sequence number, timestamp, event type, document number, ...) 2. The hash of the previous entry

Advantage: Manipulations are detected immediately because the hash chain breaks.

Example:

Entry 1 (Genesis):

- Hash: a1b2c3... (first entry, no predecessor)

Entry 2:

- Previous hash: a1b2c3... (hash of Entry 1)
- Hash: b2c3d4... (calculated from Entry 2 + a1b2c3...)

Entry 3:

- Previous hash: b2c3d4... (hash of Entry 2)
- Hash: c3d4e5... (calculated from Entry 3 + b2c3d4...)

If someone **changes Entry 2** retroactively: - The hash of Entry 2 changes (e.g., from b2c3d4... to x9y8z7...) - Entry 3 expects b2c3d4... as previous hash - Verification fails: **Manipulation detected!**

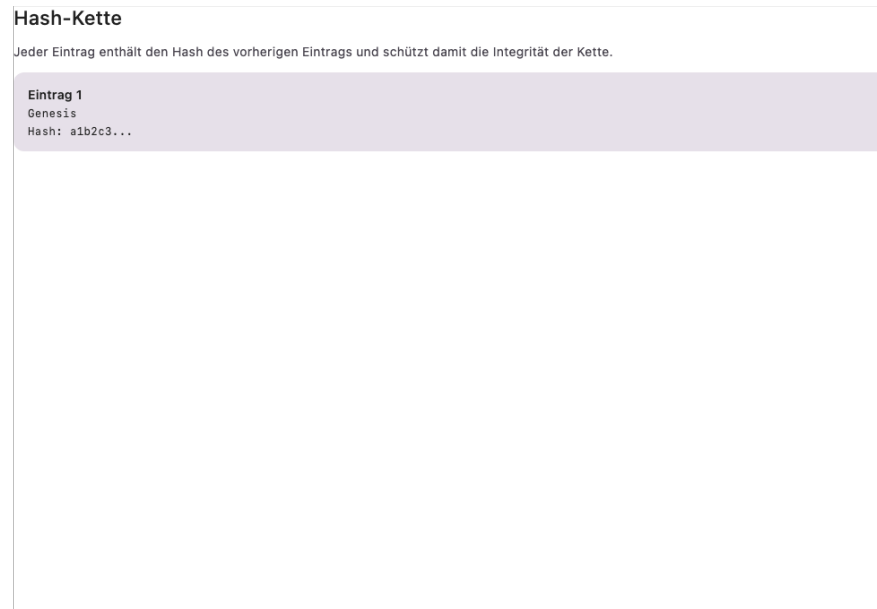


Figure 297: The hash chain protects against manipulation

[i] **Pro Tip:** The hash chain works like a blockchain – any change to an earlier entry breaks the entire chain.

What Is Logged?

[+] **Always logged (business transactions):** - Invoice published (Draft → Published) - Invoice sent (Published → Sent) - Payment recorded (partial or complete) - Invoice canceled - PDF/XML exported (with file hash) - Correction invoice created and published - Quote accepted/rejected - Reminder sent - Timesheet invoiced - Draft deleted (for gap-free chain)

× **Never logged (internal operations):** - Draft created - Draft saved (while status = Draft) - User interface interactions - Read operations (queries)

Why are drafts not logged?

GoBD principle: Only log **business transactions**.

- **Draft = preparation:** Drafts are internal work, not business transactions
- **No tax obligation:** Drafts create no tax-relevant obligations
- **Frequent changes:** Drafts are often saved – logging every save would be noise
- **Publication = transaction starts:** Only with publication does the business transaction begin

Exception: Draft deletion **is logged** to avoid gaps in the chain.

XRechnung Export: Two Separate Entries

If you export an invoice as **XRechnung** (e-invoice), **two separate audit log entries** are created:

1. **DOCUMENT_EXPORTED_PDF:** For the PDF file with its own hash
2. **DOCUMENT_EXPORTED_XML:** For the XML file with its own hash

Why two entries? - Each file is an independent artifact - Each file needs its own hash for integrity check - Completeness: Both files are explicitly tracked

Example: Export of invoice RE-2025-42 with XRechnung:

Sequence 1234:	DOCUMENT_EXPORTED_PDF	-	RE-2025-42.pdf (Hash: a1b2c3...)
Sequence 1235:	DOCUMENT_EXPORTED_XML	-	RE-2025-42.xml (Hash: d4e5f6...)

10.4 View Audit Log

Display Audit Log for a Document

Each published invoice, quote, or reminder has its own **audit log**.

Access:

1. Open the document list (**Documents** in sidebar)
2. Select a published document
3. Click **Audit log** (or the corresponding icon)

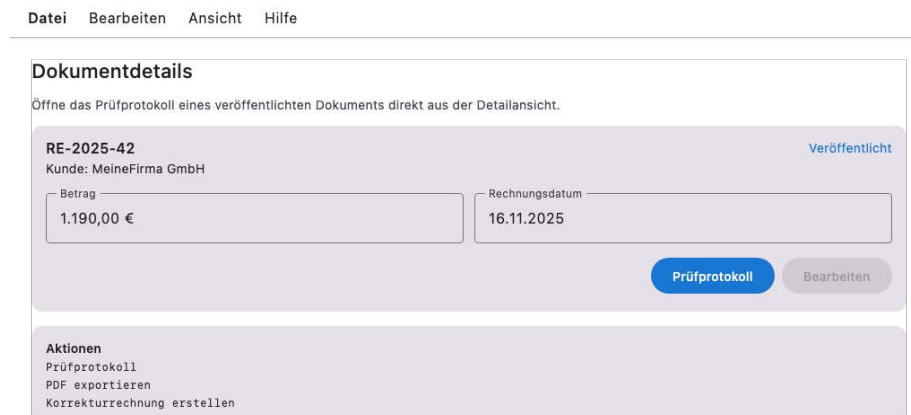


Figure 298: Open the audit log of a document

Display:

The audit log shows all events for this document in chronological order: - **Sequence number:** Sequential number in the entire chain - **Timestamp:** When the event occurred - **User:** Who performed the action - **Event type:** Type of business transaction - **Description:** Readable description - **State before/after:** Status transitions

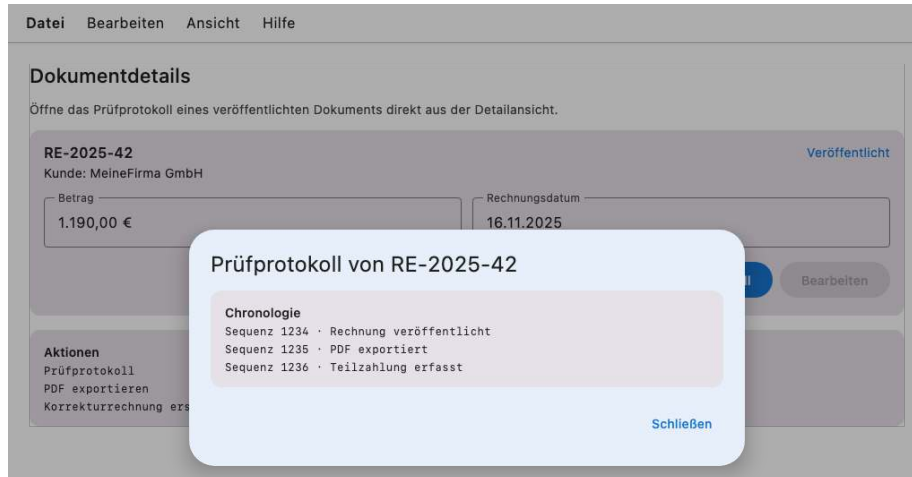


Figure 299: Audit log of a document

[i] Pro Tip: If you see multiple events for a document (e.g., publication, payment, export), they are linked via the **transaction ID**.

Export Complete Audit Log

For tax audits, you can export the complete audit log of all tenants.

See Section 9.5: Export for tax audits

10.5 Export for Tax Audits

Why an Export?

During an operational audit, you must grant the tax auditor access to your business data. With the export function, you create a **GoBD-compliant archive** that contains: - All audit log entries (CSV format) - All exported PDFs and XMLs - Verification data (JSON) for integrity check - Instructions for the auditor (README.txt)

Create Export

Steps:

1. Click **File** in the top menu bar
2. Select **Export audit log...**



Figure 300: Export audit log via File menu

3. A dialog opens: **Export audit log**

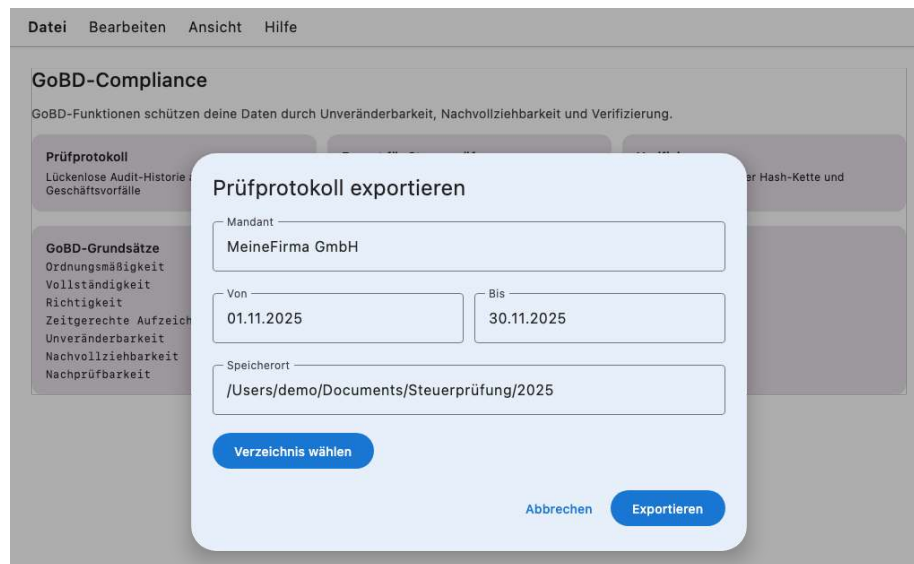


Figure 301: Export dialog for audit log

4. **Select tenant** (if you use multiple tenants)
 - Dropdown menu shows all tenants
 - Select the tenant you want to export
5. **Select period**
 - **From:** Start date (e.g., 01/01/2025)
 - **To:** End date (e.g., 12/31/2025)
 - Only audit log entries in this period are exported

6. Choose storage location

- Click **Choose directory**
- Select a folder (e.g., ~/Documents/Tax-Audit/2025/)
- The export is saved as a ZIP file

7. Start export

- Click **Export**
- A progress bar shows export status

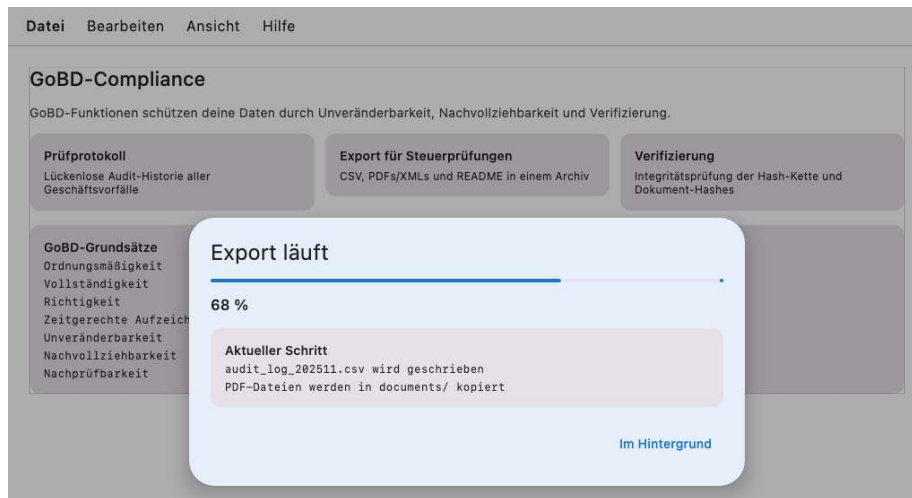


Figure 302: Export progress indicator

8. Export completed

- A success message appears
- The ZIP file was saved in the selected folder

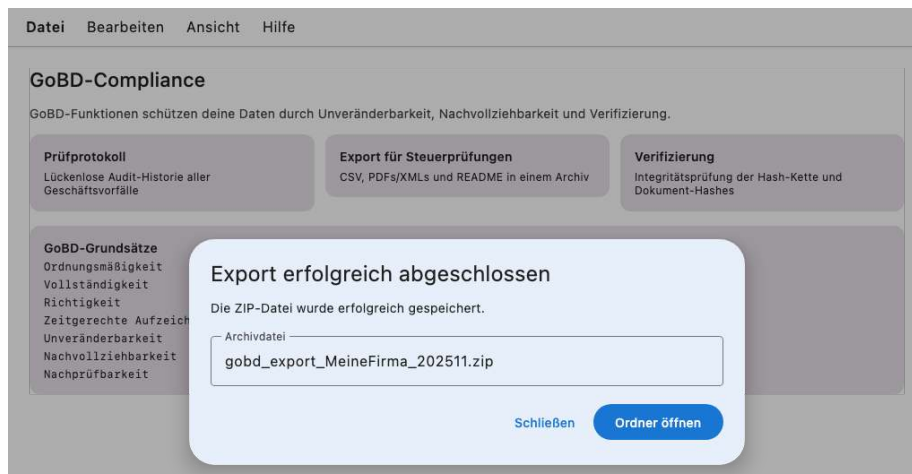


Figure 303: Export completed successfully

[i] **Pro Tip:** Create **monthly exports** for your accounting – this way you

always have an archive ready.

Export Package Structure

The exported ZIP file has the following structure:

```
gobd_export_MyCompany_202511.zip
├── README.txt                # Instructions for auditor (German)
├── audit_log_202511.csv      # All audit log entries (CSV)
├── audit_log_202511_verification.json # Verification data (JSON)
├── documents/                # All exported documents
│   ├── invoices/
│   │   ├── RE-2025-1.pdf
│   │   ├── RE-2025-1.xml    # If XRechnung
│   │   └── RE-2025-2.pdf
│   ├── quotes/
│   │   └── Q-2025-1.pdf
│   ├── corrections/
│   │   └── CORR-2025-1.pdf
│   └── reminders/
│       └── M-2025-1-L1.pdf
```

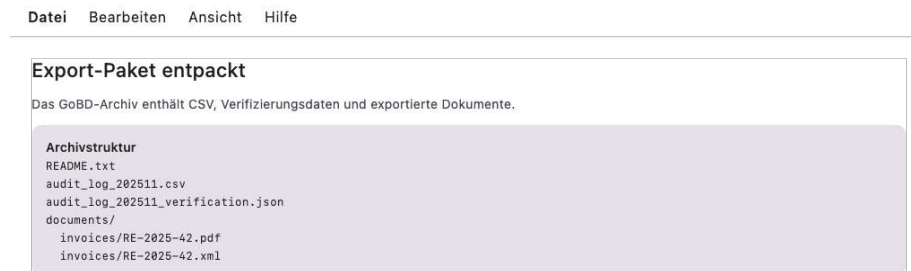


Figure 304: Contents of export package

CSV Format

The file `audit_log_202511.csv` contains all audit log entries in CSV format (UTF-8 with BOM, separator: semicolon):

Columns: - `sequence_number`: Sequence number - `timestamp`: Timestamp (epoch milliseconds) - `created_by`: User - `tenant_id`: Tenant ID - `event_type`: Event type - `entity_type`: Entity type - `entity_id`: Entity ID - `transaction_id`: Transaction ID (groups related events) - `document_type`: Document type - `document_number`: Document number - `state_before`: Status before - `state_after`: Status after - de-

scription: Description - event_data_json: Event data (JSON) - previous_hash: Hash of previous entry - current_hash: Hash of this entry

Example row:

1,1698753600000, john.doe, tenant-123, DOCUMENT_PUBLISHED, SALES_DOCUMENT, doc-001, tx

[i] **Pro Tip:** The CSV file can be opened with Excel, LibreOffice Calc, or specialized audit software.

Verification JSON

The file audit_log_202511_verification.json contains metadata for integrity check:

Contents: - **Export metadata:** Date, tenant, user - **Hash chain info:** First hash, last hash - **Document hashes:** SHA-256 hashes of all PDFs/XMLs - **Statistics:** Number of invoices, payments, corrections

Example:

```
{
  "export_metadata": {
    "export_date": "2025-11-16T14:35:22Z",
    "tenant_name": "MyCompany GmbH",
    "exported_by": "john.doe",
    "date_range": {
      "from": "2025-11-01",
      "to": "2025-11-30"
    }
  },
  "chain_integrity": {
    "first_entry_hash": "a1b2c3d4e5f6...",
    "last_entry_hash": "x9y8z7w6v5u4...",
    "total_entries": 1234
  },
  "document_hashes": {
    "RE-2025-1.pdf": "d4e5f6a7b8c9...",
    "RE-2025-1.xml": "e5f6a7b8c9d0...",
    "Q-2025-1.pdf": "f6a7b8c9d0e1..."
  },
  "statistics": {
    "invoices": 42,
    "quotes": 12,
    "payments": 38,
    "corrections": 2
  }
}
```

README for Auditors

The file README .txt contains German instructions for tax auditors:

Contents: - What is contained in this archive - How to read the CSV file - How to verify the hash chain - Contact information for inquiries

[i] **Pro Tip:** If the auditor has questions, refer them to this user manual (Chapter 9).

10.6 Verify Audit Log

Why Verify?

Verification checks the integrity of the hash chain and ensures that: - No audit log entries were changed retroactively - No entries were deleted - Sequence numbers are gap-free - All hashes are calculated correctly

When to verify? - Before an export for tax audits - Regularly (e.g., monthly) for quality assurance - If you suspect manipulation

Verify Complete Chain

Steps:

1. Click **File** in the top menu bar
2. Select **Verify audit log**

Datei Bearbeiten Ansicht Hilfe



GoBD-Aktionen
Exportiere Prüfprotokoll, PDFs und Verifizierungsdaten als ZIP-Archiv.
Verifiziere die vollständige Hash-Kette oder importierte Exportpakete.

Figure 305: Verify audit log via File menu

3. A dialog opens: **Verify audit log**

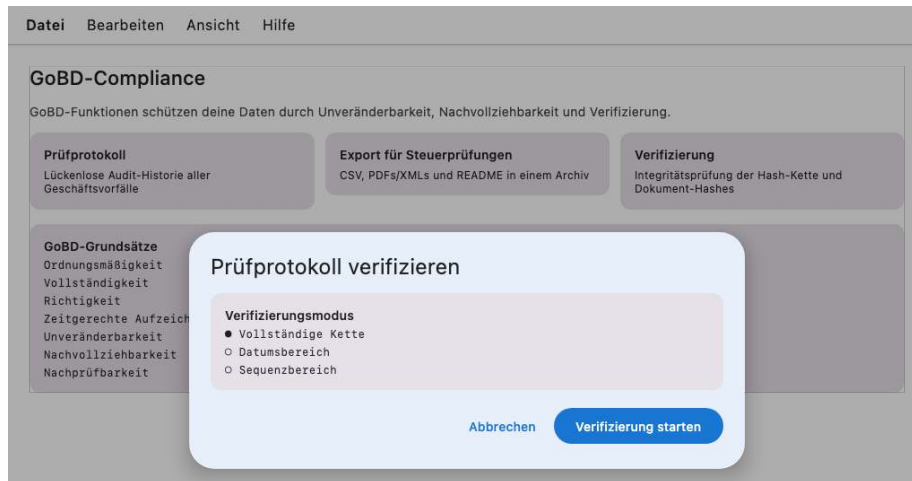


Figure 306: Verification dialog

4. **Select verification mode**

- **Complete chain:** All entries (recommended)
- **Date range:** Only entries in a specific period
- **Sequence range:** Only entries with specific sequence numbers

5. **Start verification**

- Click **Start verification**
- A progress bar shows verification status

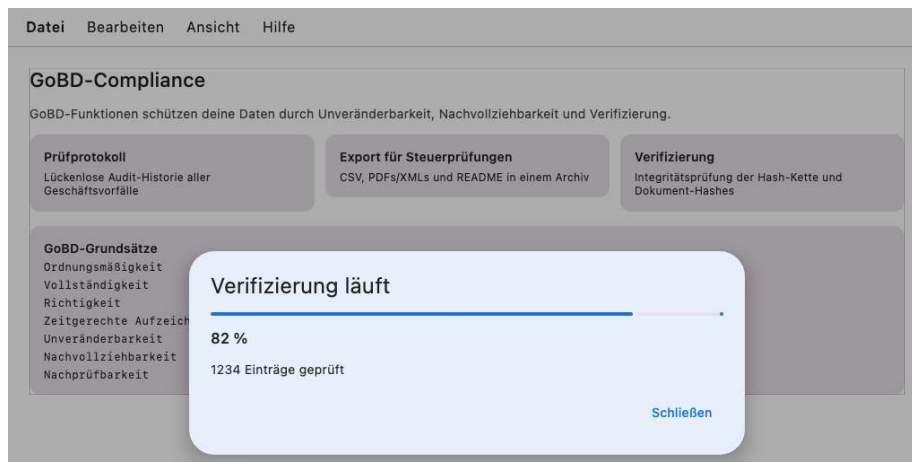


Figure 307: Verification running

6. **Check result**

- **Success:** All hashes match, no manipulation detected
- **Failed:** Hash chain is broken, manipulation detected

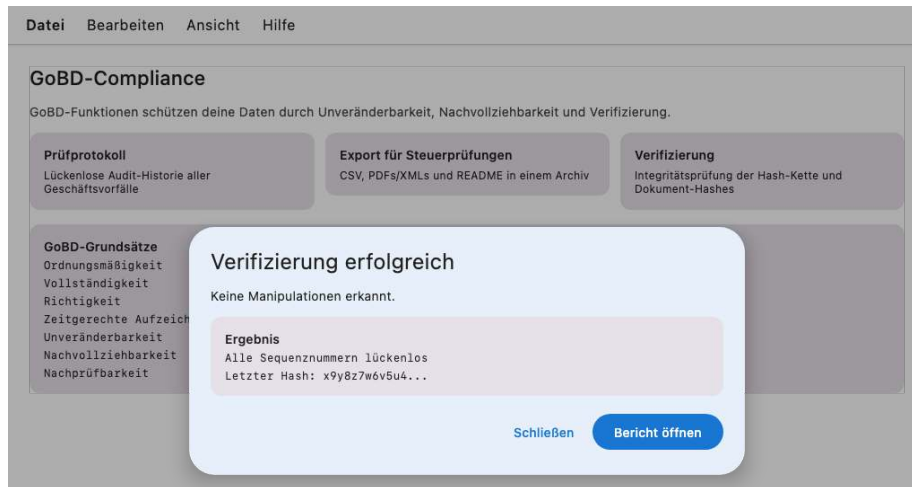


Figure 308: Verification successful – no manipulation

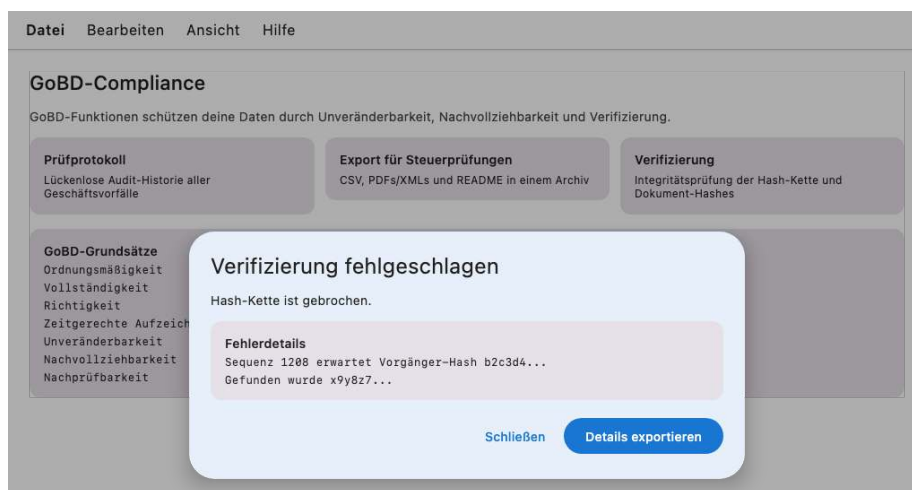


Figure 309: Verification failed – manipulation detected

[i] **Pro Tip:** If verification fails, contact support immediately – a broken hash chain indicates database corruption or manipulation.

Verify Export Archive

You can also verify an already exported archive (ZIP file).

Steps:

1. Click **File** in the top menu bar
2. Select **Verify export archive...**



GoBD-Aktionen
Exportiere Prüfprotokoll, PDFs und Verifizierungsdaten als ZIP-Archiv.
Verifiziere die vollständige Hash-Kette oder importierte Exportpakete.

Figure 310: Verify export archive via File menu

3. A dialog opens: **Verify export archive**

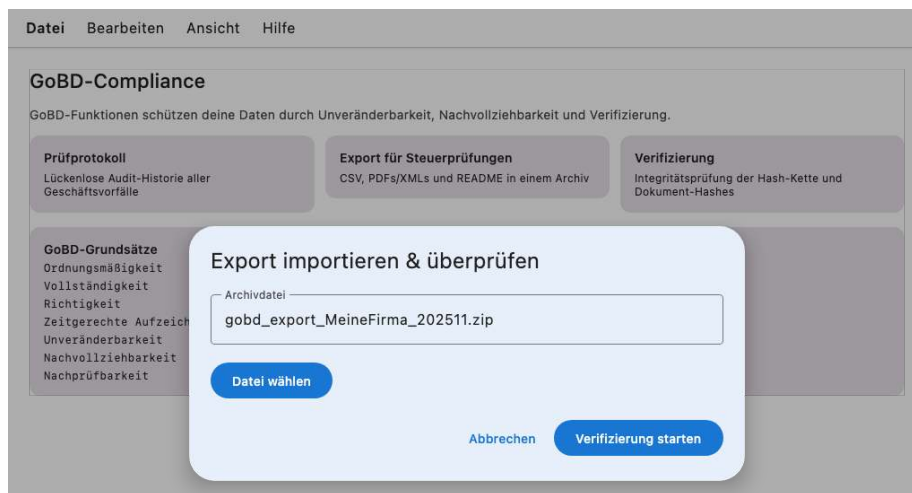


Figure 311: Select an export archive

4. **Select ZIP file**

- Click **Choose file**
- Select an exported ZIP file (e.g., gobd_export_MyCompany_202511.zip)

5. **Start verification**

- Click **Start verification**
- The application:
 - Unpacks the archive temporarily
 - Reads audit_log_202511.csv
 - Reads audit_log_202511_verification.json
 - Checks all hashes
 - Checks document hashes (PDFs/XMLs)

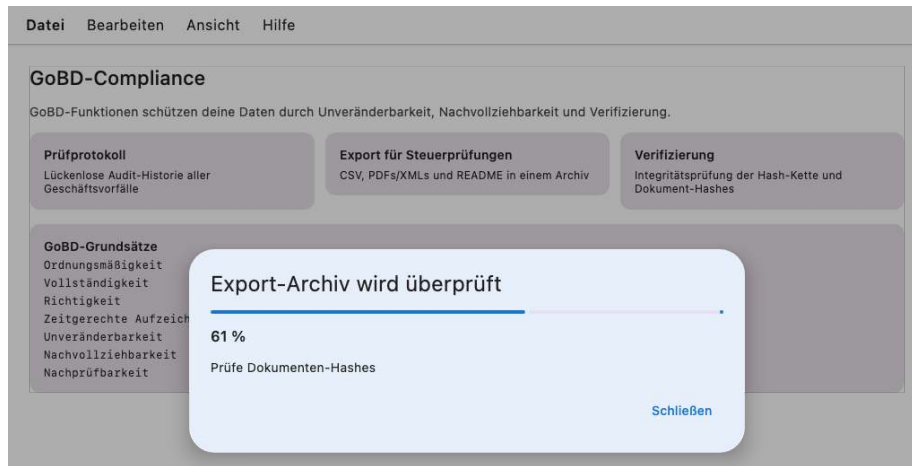


Figure 312: Verification of export archive

6. Check result

- **Success:** Archive is intact, no manipulation
- **Failed:** Archive was modified or is damaged

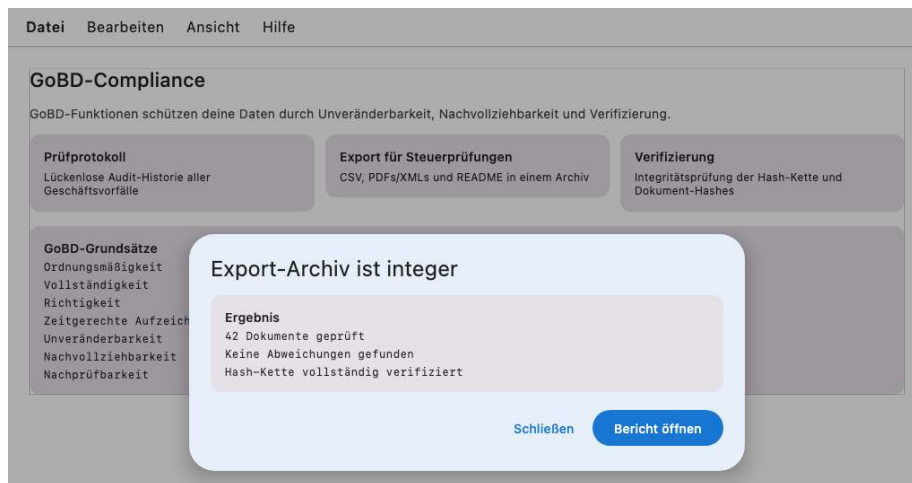


Figure 313: Export archive is intact

[i] **Pro Tip:** Verify export archives **before handing over to tax auditors** to ensure they are complete and unchanged.

10.7 Immutability: Why Invoices Cannot Be Edited

The Problem: Retroactive Changes

Imagine: - You publish an invoice: RE-2025-1 for €1,190.00 (incl. VAT) - Your customer pays the invoice - Later you change the amount to €990.00 (to save taxes) - The tax office doesn't detect the manipulation

Result: Tax evasion, fines, possibly imprisonment.

The Solution: Immutability

The application prevents retroactive changes through:

1. **Status-based lock:** Published invoices (status ≠ Draft) cannot be edited
2. **Audit log:** All changes are logged
3. **Hash chain:** Manipulations break the cryptographic chain
4. **Correction invoices:** Changes only via new correction invoices

Datei Bearbeiten Ansicht Hilfe

Rechnung nicht bearbeitbar

Veröffentlichte Rechnungen bleiben unverändert erhalten; Korrekturen erfolgen über neue Dokumente.

RE-2025-42 Veröffentlicht

Kunde: MeineFirma GmbH

Betrag	Rechnungsdatum
1.190,00 €	16.11.2025

Bearbeiten deaktiviert. Verwende stattdessen Korrekturrechnung erstellen.

Bearbeiten

Korrekturrechnung erstellen

Figure 314: Published invoice cannot be edited

Create Correction Invoice

If you need to correct a published invoice:

Steps:

1. Open the invoice
2. Click **Actions** → **Create correction invoice**
3. A new invoice is created with:
 - Negated line items (cancels original invoice)
 - New document number (e.g., CORR-2025-1)
 - Reference to original invoice
4. Publish the correction invoice

5. **Result:** Original invoice remains preserved, change is traceable

Datei Bearbeiten Ansicht Hilfe

Korrekturrechnung	
Die Korrektur referenziert das Originaldokument und negiert dessen Positionen nachvollziehbar.	
CORR-2025-1	
Bezug auf Originalrechnung RE-2025-42	
Beratungsleistung November	-1.190,00 €
Korrekturhinweis	0,00 €

Figure 315: Correction invoice with negated line items

[i] **Pro Tip:** Correction invoices are GoBD-compliant because they don't change the original invoice but create a new invoice with reference.

See Section 3.11: Create correction invoice (complete instructions)

10.8 Sequential Numbering

Why Gap-Free Numbering?

GoBD requires **gap-free, sequential numbers** for invoices so the tax office can detect if invoices were hidden.

Example (GoBD-compliant):

RE-2025-1
RE-2025-2
RE-2025-3
RE-2025-4

Example (NOT GoBD-compliant):

RE-2025-1
RE-2025-2
RE-2025-4 ← Gap! Where is RE-2025-3?
RE-2025-5

How the Application Ensures This

1. **Automatic numbering:** Invoice numbers are automatically assigned on publication (based on tenant's number pattern)
2. **No manual numbers:** You cannot manually change invoice numbers
3. **Tenant-specific sequences:** Each tenant has its own number ranges (MyCompany: RE-2025-1, YourCompany: RE-2025-1)
4. **Audit log:** Deleted drafts are logged to document gaps

Avoid Gaps

Scenario: You create a draft RE-2025-3, delete it, and create a new draft.

What happens? - Drafts have **no invoice numbers**, only temporary IDs (e.g., Draft-UUID-123) - Only on **publication** is an invoice number assigned - If you delete a draft, no gap is created

Result: Gap-free numbering guaranteed.

[i] **Pro Tip:** If you accidentally publish an invoice you don't need, use **Cancel** – this way the number remains (as canceled) but no gap is created.

10.9 Retention Obligation

10-Year Rule

GoBD requires **10 years retention period** for tax-relevant documents (§ 147 Abs. 3 AO): - Start: End of the calendar year in which the invoice was created - Example: Invoice from 11/16/2025 → Retention period until 12/31/2035

Affected: - Invoices (issued and received) - Receipts (receipts, delivery notes) - Booking documents - Audit logs

How the Application Supports This

1. **Automatic calculation:** Retention period is calculated on publication
2. **Delete prevented:** Documents cannot be deleted while retention period is active
3. **Soft delete:** If you want to delete a document, it's only marked as "deleted" but not physically removed
4. **Export archive:** Monthly exports secure data long-term

Datei Bearbeiten Ansicht Hilfe

The screenshot shows a software interface with a menu bar at the top containing 'Datei', 'Bearbeiten', 'Ansicht', and 'Hilfe'. Below the menu bar is a section titled 'Aufbewahrungsfrist' (Retention Period). Under this title, there is a message: 'Steuerrelevante Dokumente bleiben bis zum Ende der gesetzlichen Frist erhalten.' (Tax-relevant documents remain until the end of the legal retention period). Below this message is a light purple box containing the following information: 'RE-2025-42', 'Aufbewahrungsfrist bis 31.12.2035', and 'Löschung nur als Soft-Delete, physische Daten bleiben archiviert.' (Deletion only as soft-delete, physical data remains archived). Below this box is another light purple box titled 'Empfohlene Archivstrategie' (Recommended Archiving Strategy) with the following text: 'Monatliche Exporte erstellen' (Create monthly exports), 'Archive auf WORM-Speicher ablegen' (Store archives on WORM storage), and 'Jährlich Integrität prüfen' (Check integrity annually).

Figure 316: Retention period of an invoice

Archiving Strategy

Recommended approach:

1. **Monthly exports:** Create a GoBD export archive every month (see Section 9.5)
2. **WORM storage:** Store archives on **Write Once Read Many** media:
 - External hard drive (mount read-only)
 - Cloud storage with Object Lock (AWS S3 Glacier, Google Cloud Archival Storage)
 - DVD-R/Blu-ray (only for small archives)
3. **Verify:** Check annually if archives are still readable and intact
4. **Backup-backup:** Keep second copy at different location (fire protection)

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use cloud storage with 10-year retention guarantee (e.g., AWS S3 Glacier Deep Archive) – this way you're protected even with hard drive failure.

10.10 Data Access for Tax Auditors (Z1, Z2, Z3)

The Three Access Levels

The tax office can require different access options during an operational audit:

Access Level	Description	What you must provide
Z1	Direct access – Auditor works directly in your system	Read access to database or application
Z2	Mediated access – You export filtered data for auditor	GoBD export for specific period (see Section 9.5)
Z3	Data media transfer (Z3/GDPdU) – Export as ZIP archive	Z3/GDPdU export archives for the requested period(s)

In practice: - **Z2 is most common:** You export data for the year being audited - **Z1 is rarer:** Only for complex audits or suspicion of manipulation - **Z3 is very rare:** Only for very large companies or forensic audits

Z1: Direct Access

What you must do:

1. **Create database copy:**
 - Close the application
 - Copy the database file:
 - **Linux:** `~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db`
 - **macOS:** `~/Library/Application Support/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db`
 - **Windows:** `%LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\invoicer_db.db`
 - Hand over the copy to the auditor (e.g., on USB stick)
2. **Auditor opens database:**
 - With SQLite browser (e.g., DB Browser for SQLite)
 - Or with specialized audit software (IDEA, ACL Analytics)

[i] **Pro Tip:** Create a backup before handover – this way you have a copy in case the database is damaged.

Z2: Export Filtered Data

What you must do:

1. Create a GoBD export for the period being audited (see Section 9.5)
2. Hand over the ZIP file to the auditor (e.g., on USB stick or via cloud link)
3. The auditor opens the CSV file with Excel/LibreOffice or specialized software

Advantages: - You retain control over your data (auditor has no access to entire database) - Auditor can analyze data but not change it - Export is portable and universally readable

Z3: Z3/GDPdU Export

What you must do:

1. Open File → Export Data (Z3)...
2. Select **tenant** and the requested **time period**
3. Start export and hand over the created ZIP file(s) to the auditor

[i] **Hint:** If the auditor requests multiple years/periods, create multiple exports accordingly.

10.11 Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ)

Question 1: Can I change a published invoice?

Answer: No, that's not GoBD-compliant. Use a **correction invoice** instead (see Section 9.7).

Question 2: What happens if I delete the audit log?

Answer: The audit log is stored in the database and cannot be deleted via the user interface. If you manually change the database (e.g., with SQLite browser), you break GoBD compliance and risk tax back payments.

Question 3: Do I have to create an archive every month?

Answer: It's **recommended** but not mandatory. For GoBD compliance, it's sufficient if you can create an archive during a tax audit. But monthly archives are a good backup strategy.

Question 4: What if verification fails?

Answer: If the hash chain is broken, this indicates: - **Database corruption** (e.g., from hard drive error) - **Manual changes** to the database (not via the application)

Solution: Restore the database from a backup and contact support.

Question 5: Can I delete drafts without violating GoBD compliance?

Answer: Yes, deleting drafts is GoBD-compliant because: - Drafts are not business transactions - Drafts don't have invoice numbers - The deletion is logged (for traceability)

Question 6: What if I discover an error in an invoice after 10 years?

Answer: After the retention period expires (10 years), you can delete documents. If you discover an error, you cannot change the invoice anymore – but the tax period has expired, so no problem.

Question 7: Do I have to print the audit log for the tax auditor?

Answer: No, the **digital form** (CSV + ZIP archive) is sufficient. The auditor analyzes the data digitally with specialized software.

Question 8: What if my computer crashes and the database is damaged?

Answer: That's why regular backups are important: - **Automatic backups:** Configure daily backups in settings (see Chapter 9) - **Monthly exports:** Create GoBD exports and store them externally - **Cloud backup:** Use cloud storage for double security

If the database is damaged, restore it from the most recent backup.

10.12 Practical Workflows

Workflow 1: Create Monthly Export for Accounting (10 minutes)

Goal: Create a GoBD export archive every month for your accounting.

Steps:

1. **Choose timing** (5 minutes at beginning of month)
 - E.g., on the 1st of each month for previous month
2. **Create export** (3 minutes)
 - Open **File** → **Export audit log...**
 - Select tenant
 - Period: 1st to last day of previous month (e.g., 11/01/2025 to 11/30/2025)
 - Storage location: ~/Documents/GoBD-Exports/2025/
 - Click **Export**
3. **Secure archive** (2 minutes)
 - Copy ZIP file to your cloud folder (Dropbox, Google Drive)
 - Optional: Copy to external hard drive

Result: You have a complete archive for the month that you can use any-time for tax audits.

[*] **Workflow Tip:** Create a calendar entry "Create GoBD export" on the 1st of each month as a reminder.

Workflow 2: Before Tax Audit: Prepare Data (30 minutes)

Goal: Prepare all data for an upcoming operational audit.

Steps:

1. **Clarify audit period** (2 minutes)
 - The auditor specifies the period (e.g., 01/01/2023 to 12/31/2025)
2. **Verify audit log** (5 minutes)
 - Open **File** → **Verify audit log**

- Select **Complete chain**
 - Click **Start verification**
 - Check result: **Success** (if failed, contact support)
3. **Create export for audit period** (10 minutes)
 - If period spans multiple years, create one export per year:
 - 01/01/2023 to 12/31/2023 →
gobd_export_MyCompany_2023.zip
 - 01/01/2024 to 12/31/2024 →
gobd_export_MyCompany_2024.zip
 - 01/01/2025 to 12/31/2025 →
gobd_export_MyCompany_2025.zip
 - Storage location: ~/Documents/Tax-Audit-2025/
 4. **Verify exports** (10 minutes)
 - Open **File** → **Verify export archive...**
 - Select all ZIP files one by one
 - Click **Start verification**
 - Check result: **Success**
 5. **Hand over data** (3 minutes)
 - Copy all ZIP files to USB stick for auditor
 - Or: Provide cloud link (e.g., Dropbox share)

Result: You have prepared and verified all data for tax audit – ready for handover.

[i] **Pro Tip:** If auditor requires Z1 access (direct database), first create a complete backup of the database.

Workflow 3: Regular Verification (Quarterly, 15 minutes)

Goal: Check the integrity of your audit log quarterly (preventive).

Steps:

1. **Choose timing** (e.g., end of each quarter)
 - March 31, June 30, September 30, December 31
2. **Complete verification** (10 minutes)
 - Open **File** → **Verify audit log**
 - Select **Complete chain**
 - Click **Start verification**
 - Wait for result (can take several minutes with many entries)
3. **Document result** (5 minutes)
 - If **Success:** Note date and result (e.g., in notes app)
 - If **Failed:** Contact support immediately and create backup

Result: You ensure that your data is always intact and no manipulations exist.

[*] **Workflow Tip:** Create a calendar entry “Verify audit log” on the last day of each quarter.

10.13 Pro Tips for GoBD Compliance

[>] **Monthly exports:** Create a GoBD export archive every month and store it in the cloud – this way you always have an archive ready and are prepared for tax audits.

[i] **Correction invoices instead of changes:** If you discover an error in a published invoice, use **Create correction invoice** – this way original invoice and change remain traceable.

[*] **Verification before export:** Verify the audit log **before** each export for tax audits – this ensures no manipulations exist.

[!] **No manual database changes:** Never change the database manually (e.g., with SQLite browser) – this breaks the hash chain and violates GoBD compliance.

[~] **Enable automatic backups:** Configure daily backups in settings (see Chapter 9) – this protects you from data loss.

[i] **Don’t publish drafts before they’re ready:** Only publish invoices when all data is correct – retroactive changes are not possible.

[*] **WORM storage for archives:** Store GoBD export archives on **Write Once Read Many** media (external hard drive, cloud with Object Lock) – this protects them from accidental deletion.

[>] **Quarterly verification:** Verify the audit log quarterly (every 3 months) – this helps you detect problems early.

[i] **Include README for auditors:** ZIP exports automatically contain a README.txt for tax auditors – you don’t need to explain anything extra.

[*] **Backup-backup:** Keep second copy of your GoBD exports at different location (e.g., external hard drive at friends/family) – fire protection!

Continue with **Chapter 11: Appendix**

11. Appendix

This appendix contains additional information to help you with daily work in the application.

11.1 Glossary

A

Audit Log

Immutable list of all business transactions. Documents Who, What, When. Uses cryptographic hash chain. See Chapter 10.3 (The Audit Log).

Auditability

GoBD principle: Tax auditors must be able to review the data. See Chapter 10.2 (The Seven GoBD Principles).

B

Backup

Backup copy of the database. Can be created automatically (daily, weekly, monthly) or manually. See Chapter 10.4 (Backup).

BIC (Bank Identifier Code)

International bank identifier code (ISO 9362). Also called SWIFT code. Required for international payments.

C

Client

An AGYNAMIX Invoicer installation that connects to a Host over the network and shares its data. The client works with a local synchronized replica of the host database. See Chapter 12.5 (Connecting as Client).

Correction Invoice

Invoice with negated line items that corrects an erroneous invoice. Fulfills GoBD requirement of immutability.

CSV (Comma-Separated Values)

Text format for tabular data. Used for GoBD exports (separator: semicolon, encoding: UTF-8 with BOM).

Customer

Business partner to whom you issue invoices or quotes. Can have multiple addresses (billing address, delivery address).

D

Database

SQLite database that stores all business data. Storage location: -
Linux: ~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db
- **macOS:** ~/Library/Application Support/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db - **Windows:** %LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\invoicer_db.db

DATEV

The accounting software system most commonly used by German tax advisors. When you export data in DATEV format, your tax advisor can import it directly into their accounting system without manual re-entry. See Chapter 10 for export options.

Delivery Note

Document that confirms delivery of goods. No payment request.

Demo Database

Prefabricated database with sample data for tests and screenshots. In the application this is stored as a **sandbox** and can be removed via **Edit → Delete Demo Data**.

Document Status

Current status of a document (Draft, Published, Sent, Partially paid, Fully paid, Canceled, Deletable). See Chapter 3.5 (Understanding document status).

Draft

Preliminary version of a document that can still be edited. Not recorded in audit log (except deletion). Only receives document number upon publication.

E**E-Invoice (Electronic Invoice)**

Invoice in structured format (XRechnung or ZUGFeRD) that can be processed by machine. Mandatory from 2025 for B2G invoices, from 2027/2028 for B2B invoices.

G**GoBD (Principles for the proper management and storage of books, records, and documents in electronic form as well as for data access)**

Guidelines from the Federal Ministry of Finance for electronic bookkeeping. See Chapter 10 (GoBD Compliance).

H**Hash (Cryptographic Hash)**

Unique checksum (SHA-256) of an audit log entry. Used for hash chain to detect manipulation.

Hash Chain

Linking of audit log entries through cryptographic hashes. Each entry contains the hash of the previous entry. Manipulation breaks the chain.

Headless Mode

Starting AGYNAMIX Invoicer with the `--headless` flag so no desktop window is shown. The server runs silently in the background and accepts client connections. Only available when the installation is configured as Host. See Chapter 12.4 (Headless Mode).

Host (Server)

The central AGYNAMIX Invoicer installation that stores the authoritative database and shares it with Clients. The host can run interactively (with a window) or headlessly (as a background server). See Chapter 12.3 (Setting Up as Host).

I**IBAN (International Bank Account Number)**

International bank account number (ISO 13616). Required for SEPA payments in Europe.

Immutability

GoBD principle: Published invoices may no longer be changed. Changes only via correction invoices.

Invoice

Payment request to a customer. Must contain certain mandatory information according to § 14 UStG (invoice number, tax number, VAT amount, etc.).

M**Leitweg-ID**

A routing identifier required on XRechnung invoices sent to German public-sector clients. It tells the government's receiving system exactly which department or cost center should receive the invoice. Ask your public-sector customer for their Leitweg-ID before creating the invoice.

Markdown

Simple markup language for formatted texts (bold, italic, lists, etc.). Used in text blocks. See Chapter 7.6 (Markdown syntax).

N**Number Pattern**

Template for document numbers (e.g., RE-`{year}`-`{doc_no}`). Uses placeholders like `{year}`, `{month}`, `{doc_no}`. See Chapter 5.7 (Understanding number patterns).

O

Operational Audit

Tax audit by the tax office. Can require Z1, Z2, or Z3 access to your data. See Chapter 10.10 (Data access for tax auditors).

Order Confirmation

Confirmation of an order placed by the customer. Sent before service delivery.

P

Payment Reminder

Payment reminder for overdue invoices. Can be multi-level (level 1, 2, 3 with increasing reminder fees).

Payment Term

Period within which an invoice must be paid (e.g., 14 days, 30 days). After expiration, the invoice is overdue.

PDF (Portable Document Format)

Standard format for exported invoices. Can be combined with XRechnung (XML) for e-invoices.

Publish

Transfer document from Draft status to Published status. From this point on, the document is immutable and receives a document number.

Q

Quote

Non-binding offer to a customer that can later be converted into an invoice. Quotes have no tax relevance until they are accepted.

R

Retention Obligation

Legal obligation to keep business documents for at least 10 years (§ 147 Abs. 3 AO). Start: End of the calendar year in which the document was created.

Replica

Local copy of the host database stored on a client machine. The replica is synchronized automatically when the client is connected to the host. It is read/write locally but the host is always the source of truth. See Chapter 12.6 (Client Mode: What to Expect).

Reverse Charge

When you invoice a business customer in another EU country, you typically

do not charge VAT – instead, the customer self-reports the VAT in their own country. This is called the reverse charge procedure. Both parties must have valid VAT IDs. In AGYNAMIX Invoicer, reverse charge is handled automatically when the customer has a foreign VAT ID and the correct tax rule is applied. (Legal basis: § 13b UStG.)

S

Sequence Number

Sequential number in audit log (0, 1, 2, 3, ...). Guarantees gap-free chain.

SQLite

Embedded database engine. Stores all data in a single file (invoicer_db.db).

Standalone

The traditional single-computer operating mode. All data is stored locally and nothing is shared over the network. Standalone is the default and the mode all existing users are already in. See Chapter 12.1 (Overview: Standalone, Host, and Client).

Synchronization

The automatic process of keeping a client's local replica up to date with the host database. Synchronization runs in the background whenever the client is connected. See Chapter 12.6.1 (Data and Synchronization).

T

Tenant

Legally independent company or business unit. Enables multi-company management in one application. Each tenant has its own invoice number ranges.

Text Block

Reusable text section for invoices (e.g., introduction, closing phrase, payment terms). Supports Markdown.

Timesheet

Recording of worked hours for billing. Can be converted into invoice.

Transaction

Tax-relevant event (e.g., publish invoice, record payment). Documented in audit log.

V

VAT ID (Value Added Tax Identification Number)

Europe-wide unique number for companies (e.g., DE123456789). Required for reverse charge procedure (§ 13b UStG).

Verification

Check of hash chain in audit log to detect manipulation. See Chapter 10.6 (Verify audit log).

X

XRechnung

A structured e-invoice format required for invoices to German public-sector clients (Bund, Länder, large municipalities). Unlike ZUGFeRD, XRechnung is XML only – it has no human-readable PDF component, but it can be processed entirely by machine. Mandatory from 2025 for invoices to public clients, with B2B mandates following from 2027/2028. See Chapter 6.8 (E-Invoices (ZUGFeRD & XRechnung)).

Z

Z1, Z2, Z3 (Data Access)

Three access levels for tax audits. Z1 = direct access to database, Z2 = filtered export, Z3 = complete export. See Chapter 10.10 (Data access for tax auditors).

ZUGFeRD (Central User Guide of the Forum for Electronic Invoicing Germany)

A practical e-invoice format that combines a normal PDF invoice with machine-readable XML data embedded inside the same file. Your customer can open it as a regular PDF and read it, while their accounting software can also import the data automatically without manual entry. Think of it as a PDF that is also a data file. See Chapter 6.8 (E-Invoices (ZUGFeRD & XRechnung)).

11.2 Keyboard Shortcuts

Global Keyboard Shortcuts

Keyboard Shortcut	Action	Available in
Ctrl+, (Windows/Linux) Cmd+, (macOS)	Open settings	Everywhere
Ctrl+N (Windows/Linux) Cmd+N (macOS)	Create new document	Document list
Ctrl+S (Windows/Linux) Cmd+S (macOS)	Save document	Document editor

Keyboard Shortcut	Action	Available in
Ctrl+W (Windows/Linux) Cmd+W (macOS)	Close current window	Dialog/window
Ctrl+Q (Windows/Linux) Cmd+Q (macOS)	Exit application	Everywhere
Esc	Close dialog	Dialogs

Menu Keyboard Shortcuts

Keyboard Shortcut	Action	Menu
Ctrl+B (Windows/Linux) Cmd+B (macOS)	Create backup	File
Ctrl+R (Windows/Linux) Cmd+R (macOS)	Restore from backup	File
F1	Open documentation	Help
Ctrl+U (Windows/Linux) Cmd+U (macOS)	Check for updates	Help

Document Editor

Keyboard Shortcut	Action	Context
Tab	Jump to next field	Form
Shift+Tab	Jump to previous field	Form
Ctrl+Enter (Windows/Linux) Cmd+Enter (macOS)	Save document	Form
Ctrl+P (Windows/Linux) Cmd+P (macOS)	Open PDF preview	Document

Markdown Editor (Text Blocks)

Keyboard Shortcut	Action	Result
Ctrl+B (Windows/Linux) Cmd+B (macOS)	Format bold	**Text**

Keyboard Shortcut	Action	Result
Ctrl+I (Windows/Linux) Cmd+I (macOS)	Format italic	*Text*
Ctrl+K (Windows/Linux) Cmd+K (macOS)	Insert link	[Text] (URL)

[i] **Pro Tip:** Hover over buttons to see tooltips with keyboard shortcuts.

11.3 Troubleshooting

Problem 1: Application Won't Start

Symptoms: - Application doesn't open on double-click - Error message: "Java not found"

Possible Causes: 1. Corrupted or incomplete installation (bundled runtime missing) 2. Running a JAR build without Java 21 or higher installed 3. Wrong Java version (e.g., Java 17)

Solution:

1. **If you installed the native app** (Windows installer / macOS DMG / Linux package):
 - Reinstall the application (a Java runtime is included)
2. **Check Java version** (only relevant when running from source/JAR):

```
java -version
```

Expected output: openjdk version "21.x.x"
3. **Install Java 21** (only if you run from source/JAR):
 - Download a Java 21 JDK (e.g., from <https://adoptium.net/>)
 - Make sure your java points to that installation
4. **Restart application**

Problem 2: Database Locked

Symptoms: - Error message: "Database is locked" - Application freezes when saving

Possible Causes: 1. Application is already running in background 2. Crash without clean exit (lock file remains)

Solution:

1. Check if application is running:

```
# Linux/macOS
ps aux | grep -i invoicer | grep -v grep

# Windows (PowerShell)
Get-Process | Where-Object {$_.ProcessName -like "*invoicer*"}

```

2. Terminate process:

```
# Linux/macOS
pkill -f "com.agynamix.invoicer.LauncherKt"

# Windows (PowerShell)
Stop-Process -Name "AGYNAMIX Invoicer" -Force

```

3. Manually delete lock file (if process is not running):

```
# Linux/macOS
rm ~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db-journal
rm ~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db-wal
rm ~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db-shm

# Windows
del %LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\invoicer_db.db-journal
del %LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\invoicer_db.db-wal
del %LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\invoicer_db.db-shm

```

4. Restart application

[!] **Important:** Only delete lock files if the application is really not running – otherwise you risk data loss.

Problem 3: PDF Export Fails

Symptoms: - Error message: “Document folder not configured” - PDF is not created

Possible Causes: 1. Document folder is not configured in settings 2. Document folder doesn't exist (was deleted) 3. No write permissions on document folder

Solution:

1. Configure document folder:

- Open **Settings** (Ctrl+, / Cmd+,)
- Scroll to **Documents**

- Click **Choose directory** next to **Document folder**
- Select a folder (e.g., ~/Documents/Invoices/)
- Click **Select folder**

2. Check write permissions:

```
# Linux/macOS
ls -ld ~/Documents/Invoices/
# Expected output: drwxr-xr-x (first 10 characters)
```

```
# If no write permissions:
chmod +w ~/Documents/Invoices/
```

3. Export again

Problem 4: XRechnung Validation Fails

Symptoms: - Error message: “XRechnung validation failed” - Customer cannot process XML

Possible Causes: 1. Required fields missing (e.g., customer VAT ID) 2. IBAN/BIC invalid 3. Tax rate not specified

Solution:

1. **Check customer data:**
 - Open **Customers** → Select customer
 - Check **Billing data:**
 - **VAT ID:** Must be filled (e.g., DE123456789)
 - **Currency:** Must be valid (EUR, USD, CHF)
 - **Default tax rate:** Must be set (19% or 7%)
2. **Check tenant bank details:**
 - Open **Tenants** → Select tenant
 - Check **Bank connection:**
 - **IBAN:** Must be valid (e.g., DE89370400440532013000)
 - **BIC:** Must be valid (e.g., COBADEFFXXX)
3. **Export invoice again** with XRechnung option

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use the KoSIT XRechnung Validator online to check XML files.

Problem 5: Verification Fails (Hash Chain Broken)

Symptoms: - Error message: “Hash chain is broken” - Verification failed at sequence number X

Possible Causes: 1. Database corruption (e.g., from hard drive error) 2. Manual changes to database (e.g., with SQLite browser) 3. Crash during audit log write operation

Solution:

1. **Restore backup:**

- Open **File** → **Restore from backup...**
- Select newest intact backup (before the problem)
- Click **Restore**

2. **If no backup available:**

- Contact support (see Section 10.5)
- Send the following information:
 - Error message (screenshot)
 - Sequence number where error occurred
 - Database file (if possible)

[!] **Important:** A broken hash chain is a serious problem – it indicates database corruption or manipulation.

Problem 6: Payment Reminder Cannot Be Created

Symptoms: - Button **Create reminder** is grayed out - Error message: “Invoice must be published and overdue”

Possible Causes: 1. Invoice is still draft (not published) 2. Invoice is not yet due (payment term not expired) 3. Invoice is already fully paid

Solution:

1. **Check invoice status:**

- Open the invoice
- Check status: Must be **Published** or **Sent**

2. **Check due date:**

- Check **Payment term:** E.g., 14 days after invoice date
- Check current date: Must be after payment term

3. **Check payment status:**

- Check **Payment status:** Must be **Unpaid** or **Partially paid**
- If fully paid: Reminder not possible

Example: - Invoice from 11/01/2025, payment term 14 days - Due date: 11/15/2025 - Reminder possible from 11/16/2025

Problem 7: Demo Data Cannot Be Deleted

Symptoms: - Error message: “Demo data could not be deleted” - Menu item **Edit** → **Delete Demo Data** is grayed out

Possible Causes: 1. No demo data available (database was created manually) 2. Database contains production data

Solution:

1. **Check if demo database is loaded:**

- Open **Help** → **About**
- If demo database: Notice appears

2. **Manual deletion** (if necessary):

- Close the application
- Delete the sandbox database file:

```
# Linux
```

```
rm ~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/sandbox.db
```

```
# macOS
```

```
rm ~/Library/Application\ Support/agynamix-invoicer/sandbox.db
```

```
# Windows
```

```
del %LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\sandbox.db
```

- Restart the application

[!] **Important:** Manual deletion removes **all data** – only use it if you’re sure.

Problem 8: Application Is Very Slow

Symptoms: - Document list loads slowly - Search takes several seconds - UI freezes

Possible Causes: 1. Database is very large (>100,000 documents) 2. Database is on slow hard drive (network drive, USB) 3. Too little RAM (< 4 GB)

Solution:

1. **Check database size:**

```
# Linux/macOS
```

```
ls -lh ~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db
```

```
# Windows (PowerShell)
```

```
Get-Item $env:LOCALAPPDATA\agynamix-invoicer\invoicer_db.db | Select-Object
```

2. **Move database to local SSD** (if on network drive):

- Close the application
- Copy `invoicer_db.db` to local SSD
- Restart the application

3. Archive old documents:

- Create GoBD export for old years (see Chapter 10.5)
- Delete old documents (if retention period expired)

4. Allocate more RAM (if possible):

- Close other applications
- Upgrade to at least 8 GB RAM

11.4 Technical Information

System Requirements

Minimum: - **Operating System:** Windows 10, macOS 11 Big Sur, Linux (Ubuntu 20.04 or newer) - **Java:** OpenJDK 21 or higher - **RAM:** 4 GB - **Hard Drive:** 500 MB free space - **Screen Resolution:** 1280x720 pixels

Recommended: - **Operating System:** Windows 11, macOS 13 Ventura, Linux (Ubuntu 22.04 or newer) - **Java:** OpenJDK 21 - **RAM:** 8 GB or more - **Hard Drive:** 2 GB free space (incl. backups and exports) - **Screen Resolution:** 1920x1080 pixels or higher

Database Storage Location

The SQLite database is automatically created in the user directory:

Linux:

`$HOME/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db`

macOS:

`~/Library/Application Support/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db`

Windows:

`%LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\invoicer_db.db`

Additional files (temporary): - `invoicer_db.db-journal`: Transaction journal (only during write operations) - `invoicer_db.db-wal`: Write-Ahead Log (performance optimization) - `invoicer_db.db-shm`: Shared Memory (performance optimization)

[i] Pro Tip: To back up the database, only copy `invoicer_db.db` – temporary files are automatically recreated.

Open Database Folder

Via the application: 1. Click **Help** in the menu bar 2. Select **Open database folder** 3. The folder opens in file manager

Manually:

Linux/macOS:

```
cd ~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/  
# or for macOS:  
cd ~/Library/Application\ Support/agynamix-invoicer/
```

Windows (PowerShell):

```
cd $env:LOCALAPPDATA\agynamix-invoicer\
```

Log File (Debug Information)

The log file can be helpful in case of problems:

Display log file: 1. Click **Help** in the menu bar 2. Select **Show log** 3. The log file opens in a text editor

Log storage location:

Linux:

```
$HOME/.config/agynamix-invoicer/logs/app.log
```

macOS:

```
~/Library/Application Support/agynamix-  
invoicer/logs/app.log
```

Windows:

```
%LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\logs\app.log
```

Example log entry:

```
2026-01-12 10:15:22 INFO [main] c.a.i.MainKt -  
Starting Agynamix Invoicer v1.2.0  
2026-01-12 10:15:23 INFO [main] c.a.i.db.DatabaseManager -  
Database initialized successfully  
2026-01-12 10:15:25 ERROR [main] c.a.i.ui.MainScreen -  
Failed to load tenants: Database locked
```

[i] Pro Tip: Include the log file with support requests – it helps with error diagnosis.

Technologies Used

The application uses the following open-source libraries:

Library	Version	License	Purpose
Apache PDFBox	3.0.6	Apache License 2.0	PDF creation and manipulation
Flexmark	0.64.8	BSD 2-Clause	Markdown processing
FlatLaf	3.6.2	Apache License 2.0	Modern Swing look-and-feel
Flying Saucer	10.0.0	LGPL 2.1+	HTML-to-PDF rendering
Jetpack Compose	1.9.0	Apache License 2.0	UI framework
Koin	4.1.1	Apache License 2.0	Dependency injection
Kotlin	2.1.0	Apache License 2.0	Programming language
Kotlinx Serialization	1.8.0	Apache License 2.0	JSON serialization
Logback	1.5.16	EPL 1.0 / LGPL 2.1	Logging framework
Mustangproject	3.3.3	Apache License 2.0	ZUGFeRD/XRechnung creation
Pebble Templates	3.2.4	BSD 3-Clause	Template engine
SQLDelight	2.1.0	Apache License 2.0	Type-safe Kotlin SQL
SQLite JDBC	3.50.3.0	Apache License 2.0	SQLite driver
unDraw	2025	unDraw License	Open-source illustrations

Complete licenses: - Open **Help** → **About** in the application - Click **Show licenses**

Version Information

Version: 1.2.0

Build Date: January 12, 2026

Git Commit: [Commit hash]

Display version information: 1. Click **Help** in the menu bar 2. Select **About** 3. Version information appears in dialog

11.5 License and Copyright

License

AGYNAMIX Invoicer is proprietary software.

Copyright © 2025 AGYNAMIX Torsten Uhlmann

Buchenweg 5
09380 Thalheim
Germany

All rights reserved.

License Grant

AGYNAMIX Torsten Uhlmann (“Licensor”) grants you a limited, non-exclusive, non-transferable, revocable license to use this software (“Software”) exclusively for your personal or internal business purposes.

Restrictions

You may not: - Copy, modify, adapt, translate, or create derivative works of the Software - Reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, or attempt to derive the source code of the Software - Rent, lease, lend, sell, sublicense, distribute, or otherwise transfer the Software to third parties - Remove, alter, or obscure any proprietary notices on the Software - Use the Software for illegal purposes or in violation of applicable laws

Full License

The complete license agreement can be found at: - **German:**
<https://invoicer.agynamix.de/manual/de/v1.4/license.pdf> - **English:**
<https://invoicer.agynamix.de/manual/en/v1.4/license.pdf>

Or in the application: 1. Click **Help** in the menu bar 2. Select **About** 3. Click **Show license**

11.6 Support and Contact

Online Documentation

Website: <https://invoicer.agynamix.de>

On the website you will find: - Complete user manual (PDF download)
- Video tutorials (planned) - FAQ (frequently asked questions) - Release notes (version notes)

Support Contact

Email: support@agynamix.de

Response Time: Weekdays within 24 hours

When contacting support, please provide: - **Version number** (see **Help → About**) - **Operating system** (Windows, macOS, Linux with version) - **Error description** (step-by-step, what you did) - **Error message** (screenshot or exact wording) - **Log file** (if relevant, see Section 10.4)

Updates

Automatic update check: - Open **Settings** (Ctrl+, / Cmd+,) - Enable **Automatically check for updates** under **Updates**

Manual update check: 1. Click **Help** in the menu bar 2. Select **Check for updates** 3. If update available: Dialog with download link appears

Update interval: New versions are released approximately every 2–4 weeks (beta phase), later quarterly.

Community

Planned (in the future): - **Forum:** Community forum for questions and exchange - **Blog:** Tips, tricks, and best practices - **Newsletter:** Monthly newsletter with new features

11.7 About This Documentation

Version

Documentation version: 1.2.0

Date: January 12, 2026

Application version: 1.2.0

Authors

This documentation was created by: - **AGYNAMIX Torsten Uhlmann** (Main author)

Feedback

If you find errors in this documentation or have suggestions for improvement, please contact us:

Email: documentation@agynamix.de

Subject: “User Manual Feedback v1.2.0”

Please specify: - **Chapter:** Which chapter does your feedback concern? (e.g., “Chapter 3.7”) - **Page/Section:** Where exactly is the problem? (e.g., “Workflow 2: Create invoice”) - **Error type:** Spelling error, unclear wording, missing information, wrong screenshot? - **Improvement suggestion:** How should it be better worded?

[i] Pro Tip: Screenshots with markings help us understand your feedback faster.

Change History

Version 1.0 (November 16, 2025): - First complete release - All 11 chapters completed - 316 figures (placeholders for screenshots) - Glossary with 40+ terms - 8 common problems with solutions

Version 1.2.0 (January 12, 2026): - Updated Settings chapter with Email, Document Emails, and User Management - Added a dedicated “Send document via email” section in Documents - Expanded customer/tenant documentation with new contact and business fields

11.8 Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ)

General

I published an invoice by mistake – what do I do?

You cannot unpublish an invoice (this is a GoBD requirement – all published business documents must remain in the audit log). However, you can issue a **correction invoice** that negates the incorrect invoice. Go to the invoice, click **Correction Invoice**, and confirm. This creates a new invoice with all items negated (effectively cancelling the original), and you can then create a correct invoice from scratch.

My invoice number skipped a number – is that a problem?

A gap may be suspicious to tax auditors but is not automatically a legal violation (German courts have confirmed this). However, you should document the reason (e.g., “test invoice deleted” or “numbering scheme changed”). AGYNAMIX Invoicer’s audit log records all actions, which helps explain gaps.

How do I change my company logo or address on published invoices?

Published invoices cannot be changed (immutability principle). To change your company details for future invoices, go to **Tenants** and update the tenant's data. Previously published invoices will retain the data that was current at the time they were published.

Can I delete an invoice?

You can only delete **drafts**. Published invoices must first be transitioned to "Deletable" status via the normal workflow (correction → cancel). Even then, the audit log entry remains. This is required by GoBD.

How do I send an invoice by email?

Open the invoice, click **Send by Email**. The email dialog opens pre-filled with the customer's email address and a subject based on the document number. You can edit the message before sending. SMTP must be configured in Settings → Email.

What is the difference between a backup and an audit log export?

A **backup** is a copy of your entire database — it lets you restore all your data if something goes wrong (hardware failure, accidental deletion). An **audit log export** is a compliance export specifically for tax purposes — it is a structured, tamper-evident record of all business transactions that tax auditors can examine. You need both: backups for disaster recovery, audit log exports for GoBD compliance.

I forgot my password — what do I do?

Use **Help** → **Password Reset** in the application (if available), or contact support at support@agynamix.de with your account details and the operating system you're using.

Is my data safe? Where is it stored?

All your data is stored **locally on your computer** — nothing is sent to the cloud unless you explicitly configure a cloud folder for backups or archive. The database file is located at: - **Windows:** %LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\invoicer_db.db - **macOS:** ~/Library/Application Support/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db - **Linux:** ~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db

Client-Server Mode

My client can't connect to the host — what do I check?

Work through this checklist: 1. Is the host computer running and the application open (or running in headless mode)? 2. Are the host address, port, username, and API token correct on the client? 3. Is there a firewall on the host computer blocking the port? (Check Windows Defender Firewall / macOS Firewall / ufw on Linux) 4. Can you ping the host from the client computer? (ping <host-ip>) 5. Can you reach the host directly via

a browser? (`http://<host-ip>:<port>/health` should return a 200 response) 6. If the host is behind a router, is port forwarding configured?

If all else fails, contact support at support@agynamix.de with details of your network configuration.

11.9 Migrating to a New Computer

If you're moving AGYNAMIX Invoicer to a new computer (e.g., buying a new laptop or upgrading your workstation), follow this guide to transfer your data without losing anything.

Step 1: Create a Backup on the Old Computer

1. On the **old computer**, open AGYNAMIX Invoicer
2. Go to **File** → **Create Backup** (or **Settings** → **Backup** → **Create Backup Now**)
3. Choose a location you can easily access from the new computer (e.g., a USB drive, a cloud folder, or a shared network drive)
4. Click **Create** – a .zip backup file is created
5. Note the location of this backup file – you'll need it in Step 3

[i] Tip: You can also simply copy the database file directly if you prefer. The database is at `~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db` (Linux), `~/Library/Application Support/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db` (macOS), or `%LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\invoicer_db.db` (Windows). However, using the built-in backup is safer as it ensures a consistent state.

Step 2: Install AGYNAMIX Invoicer on the New Computer

1. Download the installer for your new operating system from <https://invoicer.agynamix.de>
2. Install and start the application once to ensure it runs correctly
3. Close the application before restoring your data

Step 3: Restore Your Backup on the New Computer

1. On the **new computer**, open AGYNAMIX Invoicer
2. Go to **File** → **Restore Backup**
3. Navigate to your backup file and select it
4. If the backup is encrypted, enter the passphrase when prompted
5. Confirm the restore – the application will restart with your data

Step 4: Reconfigure Local Settings

Some settings are local to each computer and not included in the backup. After restoring, check and reconfigure:

Setting	Where	Notes
Document folder	Settings → Documents	Re-select or create a folder on the new machine
Backup directory	Settings → Backup	Point to a location on the new machine
Archive location	Settings → Documents → Archive	Re-select the archive folder
SMTP settings	Settings → Email	Re-enter email server credentials
Theme	Settings → Appearance	Re-select your preferred theme

Step 5: Verify Your Data

After restoring, quickly verify that your data transferred correctly: - [] Tenant(s) listed correctly - [] Customer list intact - [] Recent invoices visible - [] Documents folder accessible and PDFs present (if you copied that too) - [] Draft a test invoice to confirm everything works

Notes on License Transfer

If your license is tied to a specific computer, you may need to deactivate it on the old machine before activating it on the new one. Check **Help → License** in the application, or contact support at support@agynamix.de.

End of Documentation

Thank you for using **AGYNAMIX Invoicer!** We hope this documentation helps you with your daily work. If you have questions, don't hesitate to contact us.

Good luck with your invoicing! [>]